

DEUTSCH

Monday, February 25, 2019 5:35 AM

German learning material.

This is a learning material compilation I've made for myself, gathering information from various sources.

Although it's a self learning guide, I made it thinking about sharing it with other language learning friends, so, I've tried to be careful with formatting, you might also find some weird footnotes or references, but I always try to cite the source of the material in case you want to deepen further into one specific subject.

The original file is a OneNote, which I will be updating as I ride along, if you want access to the "live" file, feel free to shoot me an email, so that I can add you to it. (I have a similar, maybe shorter one for Russian too)

Enjoy.

Zhol G.

zholg@outlook.com

TO BE

Tuesday, August 14, 2018 1:25 PM

Here is the complete table for conjugating regular verbs:

Example: *trinken* (to drink)

English person	ending	German example
I	-e	ich trinke
you (singular informal)	-st	du trinkst
he/she/it	-t	er/sie/es trinkt
we	-en	wir trinken
you (plural informal)	-t	ihr trinkt
they	-en	sie trinken

Notice that the first and the third person plural have the same ending.

And here's the complete table for the irregular verb *sein* (to be):

English	German
I am	ich bin
you (singular informal) are	du bist
he/she/it is	er/sie/es ist
we are	wir sind
you (plural informal) are	ihr seid
they are	sie sind

You will learn about the distinction between "formal" and "informal" later (it's easy).

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Basics-2/tips-and-notes>>

Here's the breakdown:

du: 2nd person singular, informal

ihr: 2nd person plural, informal

Sie (note capital S): 2nd person singular OR plural, formal.

Confusingly, that 2nd-person-formal "Sie" looks an awful lot like both:

sie: 3rd person singular, feminine

sie: 3rd person plural, all genders

"Sie" as 2nd person plural, formal, takes the same endings as "sie", 3rd person plural, no matter whether the formally addressed "you" is one or more people. It's also always capitalized.

Here's what all those pronouns look like with the verb sprechen:

(2nd person) du sprichst (sing. inform.) ihr sprechst (pl. inform.) Sie sprechen (sing./pl. form.)

(3rd person) sie spricht (sing.) sie sprechen (pl.)

Hope that helps!

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/4088560>>

ARTICLES

Wednesday, November 21, 2018 9:16 AM

DEFINITE AND INDEFINITE GERMAN ARTICLES AND THEIR CASES

German has three words — **der**, **die** and **das** — for the definite article *the*. To make matters more confusing for someone learning German, these three definite articles change spelling according to the case of the noun that they appear with in a sentence.

The same is true for the indefinite articles. Just as English has two indefinite articles — *a* and *an* — that you use with singular nouns, German also has two indefinite articles (in the nominative case): **ein** for masculine- and neuter-gender words and **eine** for feminine-gender words.

Another similarity with English is that the German indefinite article **ein/eine** doesn't have a plural form. Depending on how you're describing something plural, you may or may not need to use the plural definite article. Consider the following generalized statement, which requires no article: **In Zermatt sind Autos verboten.** (*Cars are forbidden in Zermatt [Switzerland].*)

The following table shows you the definite articles and the corresponding indefinite articles (nominative case):

Gender/Number	Definite (the)	Indefinite (a/an)
Masculine	der	ein
Feminine	die	eine
Neuter	das	ein
Plural	die	(no plural form)

Definite and Indefinite Article (All Cases)

The following charts summarize the article forms and noun spelling changes across all four cases. What you need to memorize is the "range of meanings" of each article. For example: Whenever you encounter *der*, you need to know that you are dealing with either nominative masculine, dative feminine, genitive feminine, or genitive plural. This reading skill is sometimes going to be crucial for understanding the structure of German sentences.

Definite Article

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	<i>der</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>
ACCUSATIVE	<i>den</i>	<i>die</i>	<i>das</i>	<i>die</i>
DATIVE	<i>dem</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>dem</i>	<i>den+ n</i>
GENITIVE	<i>des + s/es</i>	<i>der</i>	<i>des + s/es</i>	<i>der</i>

Indefinite Article

	MASCULINE	FEMININE	NEUTER	PLURAL
NOMINATIVE	<i>ein</i>	<i>eine</i>	<i>ein</i>	<i>keine</i>
ACCUSATIVE	<i>einen</i>	<i>eine</i>	<i>ein</i>	<i>keine</i>
DATIVE	<i>einem</i>	<i>einer</i>	<i>einem</i>	<i>keinen+ n</i>
GENITIVE	<i>eines + s/es</i>	<i>einer</i>	<i>eines + s/es</i>	<i>Keiner</i>

Remember:

1. *das* and *ein* always indicate singular.
2. *des* and *eines* are unique to singular genitive.
3. *dem* and *einem* are unique to singular dative.
4. *die* with nouns ending in **-en** is always plural.

Difference from English Usage

UNIVERSAL STATEMENTS

As you can see, German definite articles – in all their variety – carry a lot more information than does our one-size-fits-all, English "the." Accordingly, German

uses definite articles more often than English does. This is particularly important for you to consider when a German sentence makes a universal statement. In English we signal a universal statement by avoiding "the" and/or using plural forms of nouns. German, however, often still needs the noun articles in order to clarify the sentence syntax. So it is up to you to interpret whether a statement is universal or not from the context and sense of the sentence.

Der Katzen Schwanz ist ein Indikator für die unterschiedlichen Stimmungen der Katze.

The tail of a cat is an indicator of the various moods of a cat.

[or:] Tails of cats are indicators of the various moods of cats.

Die Freiheit der Meinung erlaubt aber nicht die Verächtlichmachung von Religionen.

Freedom of thought does not, however, permit the disparagement of religions. The second example is a quotation from an online discussion forum in Germany. Your own knowledge of English tells you that translating the first phrase as "The freedom of the thought" would be inappropriate (because it doesn't make sense, right?).

INFORMAL PERSON REFERENCES

Similarly, German speakers may use definite articles with proper nouns or specific individuals (which we don't do in English) in order to clarify sentence syntax. This usually occurs in more informal situations. For example:

Nein, Willi, das gehört der Mutter.

No, Willi, that belongs to Mom (or: to your mother).

Dem Karl verdanke ich die blauen Flecken hier.

I owe these bruises here to Karl.

RESPECT THE USE OF ARTICLES

The reverse is **not** true, however. You must always understand a German noun that has **no** article just as you would an English noun that has no article (like *Religionen* in the earlier example above).

Finally, do not over-apply this rule. When inclusion of the definite article in German **does** make sense to carry over in to your English translation, you must do that. Imagine if the German sentence had omitted the definite article: if that would give you a different meaning, then clearly you need to respect the fact that the German sentence chose to include the definite article.

From <<https://courses.dcs.wisc.edu/wp/readinggerman/definite-indefinite-article-all-cases/>>

DEFINITE ARTICLES

Tuesday, August 14, 2018 1:28 PM

As mentioned in *Basics 1*, German nouns have one of **three genders: feminine, masculine or neuter**.

While they sometimes correspond to a *natural gender* ("der Mann" is male), most often the gender will depend on the word, not on the object it describes. For example, the word "das Mädchen" (the girl) ends in "-chen", hence it is neuter. This is called *grammatical gender*.

Each gender has its own definite article. **Der** is used for masculine nouns, **das** for neuter, and **die** for feminine. Later in this course you will learn that these might be modified according to "case".

gender definite (the) indefinite (a/an)

masculine **der** Mann **ein** Mann

neuter **das** Mädchen **ein** Mädchen

feminine **die** Frau **eine** Frau

Conjugating verbs

Here are the conjugation tables from "Basics 1" (where you can find a more detailed explanation) again.

trinken (to drink)

English person	ending	German example
I	-e	ich trinke
you (singular informal)	-st	du trinkst
he/she/it	-t	er/sie/es trinkt

sein (to be)

English	German
I am	ich bin
you (singular informal) are	du bist
he/she/it is	er/sie/es ist

Generic vs. specific (German is not Spanish or French)

Just like in English, using or dropping the definite article makes the *difference between specific and generic*.

I like *bread* = Ich mag *Brot* (bread in general)

I like *the bread* = Ich mag *das Brot* (specific bread)

A good general rule is to use an article when you would use one in English. If there is none in English, don't use one in German.

There are some slight differences when using a few abstract nouns, but we'll see about that later.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/The/tips-and-notes>>

INDEFINITE ARTICLES

25 February 2019 10:21

The German Indefinite Articles

In German we have two main indefinite articles: **ein** and **eine**. The indefinite articles: **ein/eine** are used just like the English letter: **a**. We use **ein/eine** if something is unknown, new or non specific and we use it only with singular nouns.

Tip: If the article of the singular noun is **die** you use **eine** otherwise **ein**.

For Example: **die** Frau = **eine** Frau.
but: **das** Mädchen = **ein** Mädchen.

Maybe you wonder why we don't use the article „**die**“ when we use the word „Mädchen“ (girl). After all it is a female person. Well, I know it is strange but we have an exception here. Please note that the word „Mädchen“ has the article **das** and therefore we must use **ein Mädchen** and not eine Mädchen.

Note: If we have a plural noun we don't use the indefinite article at all:

Ein Mann mag Bier.

A man likes beer.

(Mann = singular noun).

However:

Männer mögen Bier.

Men like beer.

(Männer = plural noun).

<https://learn-german-easily.com/indefinite-articles>

PRONOUNS/CASES

Wednesday, November 21, 2018 11:41 AM

Pronouns (All Cases)

As you begin memorizing the articles for the four German cases, it may help to simultaneously be memorizing the pronouns for the four cases, since articles and pronouns share some patterns of case and gender-specific spellings. It may all "make sense" as you begin to recognize the spelling patterns. Memorizing the articles and pronouns for the four cases, three genders, and plural is a tedious but necessary and relatively small-scale task for learning to read German.

You should be able to find complete charts of all the article and pronoun forms in a reference section within your German-English dictionary. Meanwhile, here is a pronoun chart:

	NOMINATIVE		ACCUSATIVE		DATIVE
SINGULAR	<i>ich</i>	I	<i>mich</i>	me	<i>mir</i>
	<i>du</i>	you	<i>dich</i>	you	<i>dir</i>
	<i>er</i>	he / it	<i>ihn</i>	him / it	<i>ihm</i>
	<i>sie</i>	she / it	<i>sie</i>	her / it	<i>ihr</i>
	<i>es</i>	it	<i>es</i>	it	<i>ihm</i>
PLURAL	<i>wir</i>	we	<i>uns</i>	us	<i>uns</i>
	<i>ihr</i>	you	<i>euch</i>	you	<i>euch</i>
	<i>sie</i>	they	<i>sie</i>	them	<i>ihnen</i>
SING./PLURAL	<i>Sie</i>	you	<i>Sie</i>	you	<i>Ihnen</i>

Compare the [article charts](#). Some example similarities to note which aid your memorization task: **-m** as in *ihm* is always dative singular, **-r** as in *ihr* dative singular, **-en** as in *ihnen* and *Ihnen* dative plural.

Points to remember:

1. Remember the tip from [Unit 1, section 5](#): that German is very consistent about using the appropriate, gendered pronoun to refer to inanimate nouns, not just for people and animals. That's why all of the third person singular pronouns can

- mean “it” as well as “him” and “her”.
2. Pronouns agree in gender and number with the noun to which they refer, and are therefore useful clues for understanding sentences and especially for shared references across multiple sentences. Let pronouns be an easy, reliable way for you to get case, gender, and number information.

From <<https://courses.dcs.wisc.edu/wp/readinggerman/pronouns-all-cases/>>

GENDER & STUFF

Tuesday, August 14, 2018 1:29 PM

German genders are strange

Nouns in German are either **feminine, masculine or neuter**. For example, *Frau* (woman) is feminine, *Mann* (man) is masculine, and *Kind* (child) is neuter.

While some nouns (*Frau*, *Mann*, ...) have **natural gender** like in English (a woman is female, a man is male), **most nouns have grammatical gender** (depends on word ending, or seemingly random).

For example, *Mädchen* (girl) is neuter, because all words ending in *-chen* are neuter. *Wasser* (water) is neuter, but *Cola* is feminine, and *Saft* (juice) is masculine.

It is important to **learn every noun along with its gender** because parts of German sentences change depending on the gender of their nouns.

For now, just remember that the **indefinite article** (a/an) *ein* is used for masculine and neuter nouns, and *eine* is used for feminine nouns. Stay with us to find out how "cases" will later modify these.

gender indefinite article

masculine **ein** Mann

neuter **ein** Mädchen

feminine **eine** Frau

Verb conjugations

Conjugating regular verbs

Verb conjugation in German is more complex than in English. To conjugate a regular verb in the present tense, identify the stem of the verb and **add the ending** corresponding to any of the grammatical persons, which you can simply memorize. For now, here are the singular forms:

Example: *trinken* (to drink)

English person	ending	German example
----------------	--------	----------------

I	-e	ich trinke
---	----	------------

you (singular informal)	-st	du trinkst
-------------------------	-----	------------

he/she/it	-t	er/sie/es trinkt
-----------	----	------------------

Conjugations of the verb *sein* (to be)

Like in English, *sein* (to be) is completely irregular, and its conjugations simply need to be memorized. Again, you will learn the plural forms soon.

English	German
---------	--------

I am	ich bin
------	---------

you (singular informal) are	du bist
-----------------------------	---------

he/she/it is

er/sie/es **ist**

Umlauts

Umlauts are letters (more specifically vowels) that have two dots above them and appear in some German words like *Mädchen*.

Literally, "Umlaut" means "around the sound," because its function is to change how the vowel sounds.

no umlaut umlaut

a ä

o ö

u ü

An umlaut change may change the meaning. That's why it's important not to ignore those little dots.

No continuous aspect

In German, there's **no continuous aspect**. There are no separate forms for "I drink" and "I am drinking". There's only one form: *Ich trinke*.

There's no such thing as *Ich bin trinke* or *Ich bin trinken*!

When translating into English, how can I tell whether to use the simple (I drink) or the continuous form (I am drinking)?

Unless the context suggests otherwise, either form should be accepted.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Basics-1/tips-and-notes>>

Most world languages have nouns that are either masculine or feminine.

German goes them one better and adds a third gender: neuter. The **masculine definite article** ("the") is *der*, **feminine** is *die*, and **neuter** is *das*. German-speakers have had many years to learn whether *Wagen* (car) is *der* or *die* or *das*. (It's *der Wagen*)--but for learners new to the language, it's not so easy.

Forget linking gender to a specific meaning or concept. It's not the actual person, place or thing that has gender in German, but the WORD that stands for the actual thing. That's why a "car" can be either *das Auto* (neuter) or *der Wagen* (masculine).

In German the **definite article** is much more important than it is in English. For one thing, it is used more often. In English we might say: "Nature is wonderful." In German, the article would be also be included: "Die Natur ist wunderschön."

The **indefinite article** ("a" or "an" in English) is **ein** or **eine** in German. **Ein** basically means "one" and like the definite article, it indicates the gender of the noun it goes with (**eine** or **ein**). For a feminine noun, only **eine** can be used (in the nominative case). For masculine or neuter nouns, only **ein** is

correct. This is a very important concept to learn! It is also reflected in the use of possessive adjectives such as **sein(e)** (his) or **mein(e)** (my), which are also called "ein-words."

Although nouns for people often follow natural gender, there are exceptions such as *das Mädchen*, girl. There are three different German words for "ocean" or "sea"—all a different gender: *der Ozean*, *das Meer*, *die See*. And gender does not transfer well from one language to another. The word for "sun" is masculine in Spanish (*el sol*) but feminine in German (*die Sonne*). A German moon is masculine (*der Mond*), while a Spanish moon is feminine (*la luna*). It's enough to drive an English-speaker crazy!

A good general rule for learning German vocabulary is to **treat the article of a noun as an integral part of the word**. Don't just learn *Garten* (garden), learn *der Garten*. Don't just learn *Tür* (door), learn *die Tür*. Not knowing a word's gender can lead to all sorts of other problems: *das Tor* is the gate or portal; *der Tor* is the fool. Are you meeting someone at the lake (*am See*) or by the sea (*an der See*)?

But there are some hints that can help you remember the gender of a German noun. These guidelines work for many noun categories, but certainly not for all. For most nouns you will just have to know the gender. (If you're going to guess, guess *der*. The highest percentage of German nouns are masculine.) Some of the following hints are a 100 percent sure thing, while others have exceptions.

Regardless, memorizing these rules will help you get gender right without having to guess--at least not all the time!

These Words Are Always Neuter (Sachlich)

Häuschen (Cottage). Michael Rucker / Getty Images

Articles for words in these categories are *das* (the) and *ein* (a or an)

- **Nouns ending in -chen or -lein:** *Fräulein, Häuschen, Kaninchen, Mädchen* (unmarried woman, cottage, rabbit, girl/maiden).
- **Infinitives used as nouns (gerunds):** *das Essen, das Schreiben* (eating, writing)
- **Almost all of the 112 known chemical elements** (*das Aluminium, Blei, Kupfer, Uran, Zink, Zinn, Zirkonium, usw.*) - except for six that are masculine: *der Kohlenstoff* (carbon), *der Sauerstoff* (oxygen), *der Stickstoff* (nitrogen), *der Wasserstoff* (hydrogen), *der Phosphor* and *der Schwefel* (sulphur). **Note:** Most of the elements end in *-ium*, a *das* ending.
- **Names of hotels, cafés and theaters.**
- **Names of colors used as nouns:** *das Blau, das Rot* (blue, red).

Words That Are Usually Neuter

das Baby. Mayte Torres / Getty Images

- **Geographic place names** (towns, countries, continents): *das Berlin, Deutschland, Brasilien, Afrika* (but learn non-*das* countries, such as: *der Irak, der Jemen, die Schweiz, die Türkei, die USA* [plur.])
- **Young animals and people:** *das Baby, das Küken* (chick); but *der Junge* (boy).
- **Most metals:** *Aluminium, Blei, Kupfer, Messing, Zinn* (aluminium, lead, copper, brass, tin/pewter; but *die Bronze, der Stahl* - bronze, steel)
- **Nouns ending in -o** (often **cognates** from Latin): *das Auto, Büro, Kasino, Konto* (account), *Radio, Veto, Video*. **Exceptions include:** *die Avocado, die Disko, der Euro, der Scirocco, etc.*

- **Fractions:** *das/ein Viertel* ($\frac{1}{4}$), *das/ein Drittel* (but *die Hälfte*, half)
- **Most nouns starting with Ge-:** *Genick, Gerät, Geschirr, Geschlecht, Gesetz, Gespräch* (back of the neck, device, dishes, sex/gender, law, conversation), but there are many exceptions, such as *der Gebrauch, der Gedanke, die Gefahr, der Gefallen, der Genuss, der Geschmack, der Gewinn, die Gebühr, die Geburt, die Geduld, die Gemeinde, die Geschichte*, and others)
- **Most borrowed (foreign) nouns ending in -ment:** *Ressentiment, Supplement* (but *der Zement, der/das Moment* [2 diff. meanings])
- **Most nouns ending in -nis:** *Versäumnis* (neglect; but *die Erlaubnis, die Erkenntnis, die Finsternis*)
- **Most nouns ending in -tum or -um:** *Christentum, Königtum* (Christianity, kingship; but *der Irrtum, der Reichtum* - error, wealth)

Words That Are Always Masculine (Männlich)

Precipitation, such as *der Regen* (rain) is always masculine. Getty Images / Adam Berry / Stringer

The article for words in these categories is always "der" (the) or "ein" (a or an).

- **Days, months, and seasons:** *Montag, Juli, Sommer* (Monday, July, summer). The one exception is *das Frühjahr*, another word for *der Frühling*, spring.
- **Points of the compass, map locations and winds:** *Nordwest(en)* (northwest), *Süd(en)* (south), *der Föhn* (warm wind out of the Alps), *der Scirocco* (sirocco, a hot desert wind).
- **Precipitation:** *Regen, Schnee, Nebel* (rain, snow, fog/mist) -
- **Names of cars and trains:** *der VW, der ICE, der Mercedes*. (But motorbikes and aircraft are feminine.)
- **Words ending in -ismus:** *Journalismus, Kommunismus, Synchronismus* (equal -ism words in English)
- **Words ending in -ner:** *Rentner, Schaffner, Zentner, Zöllner* (pensioner, [train] conductor, hundred-weight, customs collector). The feminine form adds *-in* (*die Rentnerin*).
- **The basic "atmospheric" elements** that end in *-stoff*: *der Sauerstoff* (oxygen), *der Stickstoff* (nitrogen), *der Wasserstoff* (hydrogen), plus carbon (*der Kohlenstoff*). The only other elements (out of 112) that are masculine are *der Phosphor* and *der Schwefel* (sulphur). **Note:** All of the other chemical elements are neuter (*das Aluminium, Blei, Kupfer, Uran, Zink, usw.*).

Usually (but Not Always) Masculine

It's '*der Wine*' (masculine) if you'd like to order a glass. Getty Images/Dennis K. Johnson

- **Agents (people who do something), most occupations and nationalities:** *der Architekt, der Arzt, der Deutsche, der Fahrer, der Verkäufer, der Student, der Täter* (architect, physician, German [person], driver, salesman, student, perpetrator). **Note** that the feminine form of these terms almost always ends in *-in* (*die Architektin, die Ärztin, die Fahrerin, die Verkäuferin, die Studentin, Täterin*, but *die Deutsche*).
- **Nouns ending in -er, when referring to people** (but *die Jungfer, die Mutter, die Schwester, die Tochter, das Fenster*).
- **Names of alcoholic drinks:** *der Wein, der Wodka* (but *das Bier*)

- **Names of mountains and lakes:** *der Berg, der See* (but Germany's highest peak, *die Zugspitze*) follows the rule for the feminine ending *-e*, and *die See* is the sea).
- **Most rivers outside of Europe:** *der Amazonas, der Kongo, der Mississippi*.
- **Most nouns ending in *-ich, -ling, -ist*:** *Rettich, Sittich, Schädling, Frühling, Pazifist* (radish, parakeet, pest/parasite, spring, pacifist).

Words That Are Always Feminine (Weiblich)

"Die Zeitung" (the newspaper) is always feminine.. Getty Images / Sean Gallup / Staff

Feminine words take the article "die" (the) or "eine" (a or an).

- **Nouns ending in *-heit, -keit, -tät, -ung, -schaft*:** Examples: *die Gesundheit, Freiheit, Schnelligkeit, Universität, Zeitung, Freundschaft* (health, freedom, quickness, university, newspaper, friendship). **Note** that these suffixes usually have a corresponding English suffix, such as *-ness* (*-heit, -keit*), *-ty* (*-tät*), *-ship* (*-schaft*).
- **Nouns ending in *-ie*:** *Drogerie, Geographie, Komödie, Industrie, Ironie* (often equal to words ending in *-y* in English)
- **Names of aircraft, ships and motorbikes:** *die Boeing 747, die Titanic, die BMW* (motorbike only; the car is *der BMW*). The *die* comes from *die Maschine*, which can mean plane, motorbike and engine. **Tip:** Ships are traditionally referred to as "she" in English.
- **Nouns ending in *-ik*:** *die Grammatik, Grafik, Klinik, Musik, Panik, Physik*.
- **Borrowed (foreign) nouns ending in *-ade, -age, -anz, -enz, -ette, -ine, -ion, -tur*:** *Parade, Blamage* (shame), *Bilanz, Distanz, Frequenz, Serviette* (napkin), *Limonade, Nation, Konjunktur* (economic trend). **Note:** Such words often resemble their English equivalent. A rare 'ade' exception: *der Nomade*.
- **Cardinal numbers:** *eine Eins, eine Drei* (a one, a three).

These Words Are Usually (but Not Always) Feminine

Daisies are feminine in German. Kathy Collins / Getty Images

- **Nouns ending in *-in*** that pertain to female people, occupations, nationalities: *Amerikanerin, Studentin* (female American, student), but *der Harlekin* and also many non-people words: *das Benzin, der Urin* (gasoline/petrol, urine).
- **Most nouns ending in *-e*:** *Ecke, Ente, Grenze, Pistole, Seuche* (corner, duck, border, pistol, epidemic), but *der Deutsche, das Ensemble, der Friede, der Junge* ([the] German, ensemble, peace, boy)
- **Nouns ending in *-ei*:** *Partei, Schweinerei* (party [political], dirty trick/mess), but *das Ei, der Papagei* (egg, parrot).
- **Most types of flowers and trees:** *Birke, Chrysantheme, Eiche, Rose* (birch, chrysanthemum, oak, rose), but *der Ahorn, (maple), das Gänseblümchen* (daisy), and the word for tree is *der Baum*
- **Borrowed (foreign) nouns ending in *-isse, -itis, -ive*:** *Hornisse, Initiative* (hornet, initiative).

Tip: The German Plural Is Always "Die"

One easy aspect of German nouns is the article used for noun plurals. All German nouns, regardless of gender, become *die* in the nominative and accusative plural.

So a noun such as das Jahr (year) becomes die Jahre (years) in the plural. Sometimes the only way to recognize the plural form of a German noun is by the article: das Fenster (window) - die Fenster (windows). (Ein can't be plural, but other so-called ein-words can: keine [none], meine [my], seine [his], etc.) That's the good news. The bad news is that there are about a dozen ways to form the plural of German nouns, only one of which is to add an "s" as in English.

From <<https://www.thoughtco.com/masculine-feminine-or-nuetral-in-german-4068442>>

GENDER II

Monday, September 17, 2018 12:16 PM

Recognizing noun gender

As mentioned before, you can often know the **gender of a noun** by **looking at the word ending**.

- non-living objects that end in *-e*: these will almost always be feminine (*die Lampe, Schokolade, Erdbeere, Orange, Banane, Suppe, Hose, Jacke, Sonne, Straße, Brücke, Schule, ...*)
- nouns beginning with *Ge-* are often neuter. This is the only prefix determining gender. (*das Gebäude, Gemüse, Gesicht, Gesetz, ...*)

In addition, rhyming can often help. If you already know a noun that rhymes with the new one, there's a good chance they will have the same gender. Go for it :)

- der Fisch, der Tisch
- der Raum, der Traum, der Baum
- der Kopf, der Knopf

Pronunciation of French loanwords

When English uses a word from French, it usually pronounces it according to English sound rules. German will often sound more close to the original.

An example for this is *Restaurant*. Like in French, the last syllable will sound roughly like "raw". The *-t* will be silent. Some people will pronounce the ending similar to English "rung" instead. Of course, the *R-* will sound like the German *r*, not the English one.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Places-1/tips-and-notes>>

SEID & SIND (to be/plural)

Tuesday, August 14, 2018 2:34 PM

Use *seid* when the subject is *ihr* (you -- when speaking to several people): *ihr seid Mädchen* "you are girls", *ihr seid Jungen* "you are boys".

Use *sind* when the subject is *wir* (we) or *sie* (they): *wir sind Mädchen* (we are girls), *sie sind Jungen* (they are boys), or *Dies sind Madchen* (These are girls).

Much as in English, German doesn't have indefinite articles in the plural. (At least in positive sentences.)

So if you're not speaking about specific girls or boys, you don't use the definite article in instead simply have no article at all.

Compare:

- *Sie sind Mädchen.* = They are girls.
- *Sie sind die Mädchen.* = They are the girls.

Not quite the same -- one talks about "the girls" (a group you had been speaking about before or which is otherwise obvious to the listener) and the other just about "girls" (in general).

Use *seid* when the subject is *ihr* (you -- when speaking to several people): *ihr seid Mädchen* "you are girls", *ihr seid Jungen* "you are boys".

Use *sind* when the subject is *wir* (we) or *sie* (they): *wir sind Mädchen* (we are girls), *sie sind Jungen* (they are boys).

ACCUSATIVE CASE

Thursday, August 16, 2018 10:18 AM

German Cases

In English, the words "he" and "I" can be used as subjects (the ones doing the action in a sentence), and they change to "him" and "me" when they are objects (the ones the action is applied to). Here's an example:

Subject	Verb	Object
---------	------	--------

I	see	him
---	-----	-----

He	sees	me
----	------	----

This is called a **grammatical case**: the same word changes its form, depending on its relationship to the verb. In English, only pronouns have cases. In German, **most words** other than verbs (such as nouns, pronouns, determiners, adjectives, etc.) **have cases**.

You'll learn more about cases later; for now you just need to understand the difference between the two simplest cases: **nominative and accusative**.

The **subject** of a sentence (the one doing the action) is in the **nominative** case. So when we say *Die Frau spielt.* (The woman plays.), "die Frau" is in the nominative.

The **accusative object** is the thing or person that is directly receiving the action. For example, in *Der Mann sieht den Ball.* (The man sees the ball.), *der Mann* is the (nominative) subject and *den Ball* is the (accusative) object.

For the articles, nominative and accusative are nearly the same. Only the masculine ("der") forms change:

"a(n)"	masc.	neut.	fem.
--------	-------	-------	------

Nominative	ein	ein	eine
------------	-----	-----	------

Accusative	einen	ein	eine
------------	-------	-----	------

"the"	m.	n.	f.	pl.
-------	----	----	----	-----

Nom.	der	das	die	die
------	-----	-----	-----	-----

Acc.	den	das	die	die
------	-----	-----	-----	-----

Flexible sentence order

The fact that most words in German are affected by the case explains why the **sentence order is more flexible than in English**. For example, you can say *Das Mädchen hat den Apfel.* (The girl has the apple.) or *Den Apfel hat das Mädchen.*.. In both cases, *den Apfel* (the apple) is the accusative object, and *das Mädchen* is the subject (always nominative).

However, take note that in German, the **verb always has to be in position 2**. If something other than the subject takes up position 1, the **subject will then move after the verb**.

- Normally, I **drink** water.
- Normalerweise **trinke ich Wasser.**

Vowel change in some verbs

A few common verbs change the vowel in the **second and third person singular**.

Here is the table for a verb without vowel change:

En. person	person	<i>trinken</i>
------------	--------	----------------

I	ich	trinke
---	-----	--------

you (sg.)	du	trinkst
-----------	----	---------

he/she/it	er/sie/es	trinkt
-----------	-----------	--------

we	wir	trinken
you (pl.)	ihr	trinkt
they	sie	trinken

And here are three verbs with that vowel change. Notice that in the first two verbs, the 2nd and 3rd person singular seem the same. This is just because the *du* ending -st merged with the -s- of the verb stem. This is unrelated to the vowel change.

person	lesen	sprechen
ich	lese	spreche
du	liest	sprichst
er/sie/es	liest	spricht
wir	lesen	sprechen
ihr	lest	sprecht
sie	lesen	sprechen

Similarly, *essen* turns to *du isst/er isst*.

Sprechen (to speak) will be introduced in one of the next lessons.

Isst vs. ist

Isst and *ist* sound exactly the same. So do *Es ist ein Apfel*. and *Es isst ein Apfel*. sound the same?

Yes, but you can tell it's *Es ist ein Apfel*: *Es isst ein Apfel* is ungrammatical. The **accusative** of *ein Apfel* is *einen Apfel*. Hence, *It is eating an apple* translates as *Es isst einen Apfel*.

Of course, this only works for *masculine* nouns. Other forms will look the same in nominative and accusative:

- Er isst eine Banane.
- Er ist eine Banane.

Only context will tell you here :)

Ich habe Brot

In English, you can say "I'm having bread" when you really mean that you're eating or about to eat bread. **This does not work in German.** The verb **haben** refers to possession only. Hence, the sentence *Ich habe Brot* only translates to *I have bread*, not *I'm having bread*. Of course, the same applies to drinks. *Ich habe Wasser* only translates to *I have water*, not *I'm having water*.

Conjugation is also slightly irregular: two forms lose the -b-.

English person	German example
I	ich habe
you (sg.)	du hast
he/she/it	er/sie/es hat
we	wir haben
you (pl.)	ihr habt
they	

PHRASES

Thursday, August 16, 2018 2:43 PM

Common phrases

Commonly used phrases are often *shortened versions of a longer sentence*. Or they might be *leftovers from some old grammar* that has otherwise fallen out of use. That means that their grammar might appear strange.

For now, just learn them like you would learn a long word.

Wie geht's?

There are many ways to ask someone how they are doing. Take "How are you?," "How do you do?" and "How is it going?" as examples. In German, the common phrase or idiom uses the verb *gehen* (go): *Wie geht es dir?* (How are you?).

This can be shortened to *Wie geht's?*.

Willkommen can be a false friend

In German, *Willkommen* means welcome as in "Welcome to our home", but it does not mean welcome as in "Thank you - You're welcome". The German for the latter is *Gern geschehen* (or just *Gern!*) or *Keine Ursache*.

Entschuldigung!

Sometimes, German words can be a mouthful. Later on, you will find that you can take long words apart, and recognize the meaning from its elements.

Here's an example:

Part	Meaning
------	---------

ent-	de-
------	-----

Schuld	guilt
--------	-------

-ig	-y
-----	----

-gung	noun suffix
-------	-------------

So, *Entschuldigung* literally means something like "deguiltification": "Take the guilt away from me" :)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Common-Phrases/tips-and-notes>>

PLURALS

Sunday, August 26, 2018 1:55 PM

German plurals

In English, making plurals out of singular nouns is typically as straightforward as adding an -(e)s at the end of the word:

- the dog, the dogs

In German, different nouns have different ways of forming the plural.

Generally, you will probably have to memorize the plurals in the beginning. Later on, your brain will notice regular patterns that are not easily explained.

However, there are some major regularities that are very helpful to know. If you apply these, the task of mastering German plurals will become much easier :)

Ending in -(e)n

All nouns ending in -e, and most feminine nouns will add an -(e)n ending in the plural.

- die Frau, die Frauen
- die Ente, die Enten
- der Junge, die Jungen

Ending in -s

Most nouns ending in a full vowel will add an -s in the plural.

- das Sofa, die Sofas
- das Auto, die Autos
- das Baby, die Babys
- das Café, die Cafés

This does not apply to nouns ending in -e (which is not a full vowel).

Many of these words are of foreign origin. Some other foreign words will also get the -s plural:

- der Chef (the boss), die Chefs
- die Email, die Emails
- der Job, die Jobs

No ending change

There is no change for neuter or masculine nouns that have any of these singular endings:

- -chen, -lein, -el, or -er.
- das Mädchen, die Mädchen
- der Computer, die Computer
- der Löffel (the spoon), die Löffel

Some words for close family members will have an umlaut change:

- der Bruder (the brother), die Brüder

If words with these endings are feminine, the plural will end in -n:

- die Schwester (the sister), die Schwestern
- die Gabel (the fork), die Gabeln

Ending in -e/-er

Most German one-syllable nouns will add an -e in their plural form. There might be an umlaut change.

- das Brot (the bread), die Brote
- der Tisch (the table), die Tische
- der Ball (the ball), die Bälle

Many other **masculine or neuter** nouns will need the *-er* ending, and there may be umlaut changes.

- das Kind (the child), die Kinder
- der Mann (the man), die Männer

German feminine plurals - nouns ending in *-in*

Job descriptions are usually masculine:

- der Koch (the male cook)
- der Fahrer (the male driver)
- der Lehrer (the male teacher)
- der Arzt (the male physician)

To refer to a female, German adds *-in*:

- die Köchin (the female cook)
- die Fahrerin (the female driver)
- die Lehrerin (the female teacher)
- die Ärztin (the female physician)

As you can see, some of these get an umlaut change. The same umlaut change will happen in the plural.

The plural of the masculine forms usually refers to mixed, as well as all-male groups:

- die Köche (the cooks)
- die Fahrer (the drivers)
- die Lehrer (the teachers)
- die Ärzte (the physicians)

If you want to specify that you are talking about a group consisting of women, use the feminine plural forms. These will add *-innen* in the plural.

- die Köchinnen
- die Fahrerinnen
- die Lehrerinnen
- die Ärztinnen

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Plurals/tips-and-notes>>

NEGATION

Monday, August 27, 2018 6:52 AM

German Negatives

There are different ways to negate expressions in German (much like in English you can use "no" in some cases, and "does not" in others). The German adverb *nicht* (not) is used very often, but sometimes you need to use *kein* (not a).

Nicht

As mentioned in the lesson "Not", you should use *nicht* in the following situations:

- Negating a **noun that has a definite article** like *der Junge*(the boy) in *Das ist nicht der Junge.* (That is not the boy).
- Negating a **noun that has a possessive pronoun** like *mein Glas* (my glass) in *Das ist nicht mein Glas.* (That is not my glass).
- Negating **the verb**: *Ich trinke nicht.* (I do not drink.).
- Negating **an adverb or adverbial phrase**. For instance, *Ich tanze nicht oft.* (I do not dance often)
- Negating **an adjective that is used with sein** (to be): *Ich bin nicht hungrig.* (I am not hungry).

For details, and to learn where to put *nicht* in a sentence, refer to the "Not" lesson.

Kein

Simply put, **kein** is composed of **k + ein** and placed where the indefinite article would be in a sentence. **If you want to negate *ein*, use *kein*.**

Just like *mein* and the other possessive pronouns, **kein changes its ending like *ein*.**

For instance, look at the positive and negative statement about these two nouns:

- Er ist ein Mann. (He is a man) — Sie ist kein Mann. (She is not a/no man.)
- Ich habe eine Katze. (I have a cat.) — Ich habe keine Katze. (I have no cat.)

Here are the endings of the indefinite article so far:

	masc	neut	fem	plural
nominative	ein	ein	eine	---
accusative	ein <i>en</i>	ein	eine	---

Here is the list of the respective *kein* forms:

	masc	neut	fem	plural
nominative	kein	kein	keine	keine
accusative	keinen	kein	keine	keine

Kein is also used for **negating nouns that have no article**: *Er hat Brot.* (He has bread.)

versus *Er hat kein Brot*. (He has no bread.).

As a general rule:

- If you can use "not a/no" in English, use *kein*.
- If you need to use "not", use *nicht*.

Nicht vs. Nichts

Nicht is an adverb and is useful for negations. On the other hand, *nichts* (nothing/anything) is a pronoun and its meaning is different from that of *nicht*.

- Ich esse *nicht*. (I do not eat.)
- Ich esse *nichts*. (I eat nothing.)

Using *nicht* simply negates a fact, and is less overarching than *nichts*. For example, *Der Schüler lernt nicht*. (The student does not learn.) is less extreme than *Der Schüler lernt nichts*. (The student does not learn anything.).

Keiner, keine, keines

In German, "nobody" can be expressed in several ways.

As long as it refers to people, *niemand* works just fine:

- Niemand schläft. (Nobody sleeps.)

There is also *keiner*. It changes endings like the definite articles:

	masc.	neut.	fem.	plural
nominative	der	das	die	die
accusative	den	das	die	die
	masc.	neut.	fem.	plural
nominative	keiner	keines	keine	keine
accusative	keinen	keines	keine	Keine

For now, we teach only the default version (which is *masculine* in German):

- Keiner schläft. (None of them sleeps.)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Negatives/tips-and-notes>>

German Negatives - *nicht*

There are different ways to negate expressions in German (much like in English you can use "no" in some cases, and "does not" in others). The German adverb *nicht* (not) is used very often, but sometimes you need to use *kein* (not a). *Kein* will be taught in a later lesson.

Use *nicht* in the following situations:

***Nicht* + definite article**

Nicht negates a **noun that has a definite article**:

- Das ist **nicht der Junge**. (That is not the boy.)

***Nicht* + possessive pronoun**

Nicht negates a **noun that has a possessive pronoun**:

- Das ist **nicht mein Glas**. (That is not my glass.)

***Nicht* negates a verb**

When negating a verb, use *nicht*.

- Ich *trinke nicht*. (I do not drink.)

Why does the *nicht* appear at the end here?

Refer to the section "Position of *nicht*" below to find the answer.

***Nicht* negates an adverb**

Nicht appears before an **adverb or adverbial phrase**:

- Ich tanze **nicht oft**. (I don't dance often.)

***Nicht* negates an adjective at the end of a sentence**

When an adjective is part of a verb, also use *nicht*.

- Du bist **nicht hungrig**. (You are not hungry.)

The infinitive here is *hungry sein* (to be hungry).

Position of *Nicht*

Adverbs end up in different places in different languages. You cannot simply place the German adverb *nicht* where you would put "not" in English.

The general rule is:

***Nicht* appears before the item it negates.**

- Du bist **nicht hungrig**. (not hungry)
- Ich tanze **nicht oft**. (not often)
- Das ist **nicht mein Glas**. (not my glass)
- Das ist **nicht der Junge**. (not the boy)

So, what about *Ich trinke nicht*?

» **The German Sentence Bracket** «

Consider this English sentence:

- I *wake up* in China.

The verb would be "wake up", the infinitive "to wake up". English keeps its verb elements close together. German, on the other hand, has a peculiar sentence structure:

- Ich *wache* in China *auf*.

The infinitive here is *auf/wachen*. German will normally put the last element of the infinitive (the part that changes with the person) in position 2 of the sentence. Everything else will end up at the very end. The rest of the sentence (for example, adverbs), will appear between this "sentence bracket".

Here's a longer example:

- Infinitive: *mit Freunden ins Restaurant gehen* (to go to the restaurant with friends)
- Ich *gehe mit Freunden ins Restaurant*.

If you're confused now, don't worry :) This will become clearer as you get lots of practice throughout this course.

Why are we telling you this here? This bracket is the reason *nicht* might end up at the end of a sentence.

Consider these examples:

- Ich lerne Deutsch. (I learn German.) — *Deutsch lernen* (to learn German)
- Ich trinke Bier. (I drink beer.) — *Bier trinken* (to drink beer)
- Ich trinke nicht. — *nicht trinken* ("to not drink")

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Not/tips-and-notes>>

NICHT POSITION I

Thursday, November 8, 2018 11:43 AM

The Position of “nicht” – Part 1

| [93 Comments](#) Tagged as: [B-Level](#), [Grammar](#)



Hello everyone,
it's been a while since we've had a real grammar episode but the wait is over. Welcome to a new episode of the German is Easy – Learn German Online Course. And this time we'll have a look at the perfect topic for a hot summer day:

the position of “nicht”

The question where to put **nicht** in a sentence is one that confuses many learners. And it is one that textbooks have the perfect, spot-on answer to...
nooooo! Stupid textbooks.

Okay, to be fair... the stuff about sentence negation vs element negation, is not all wrong, but it gets really confusing once you look closer. Because just like with sentence structure, the standard material kind of fails to look under the hood. It explains symptoms, not the cause.

So we'll try a slightly different approach, one that captures the underlying mechanics just as well as [this picture does](#).

Haha. Get it? Underlying mechanics?

Seriously though, our approach is gonna be AWESOME because all we need is one rule and get this – the rule has no exceptions. WOW!!

Oh, beside that rule we also need very open mind. And a coffee because it'll be intense.

In part one we'll get to know the basic rule and we'll lay a fair bit of groundwork. And before you go like “Dude, I’m a working man, mother of 4 and full time student... I ain’t got time for groundwork.” let me tell you... you will want to read this. You need this groundwork like Burger King needs ground beef.

So, are you ready to dive in? Perfect!

Many of you probably know or have at least heard that German has two kinds of sentence structures. The **main sentence structure**, with the verb in the second position and then the **side sentence structure**. That’s the one you all hate. You know, the one you see after words

like **dass** and **weil**, the one with a all the verbs at the end.

- Ich trinke heute ein leckeres Bier. (main sentence)
- ... , dass ich heute ein leckeres Bier trinke. (side sentence)

For the average learner, the main sentence structure is the normal structure and the side sentences are just a (per)version of it.

Well, get ready for an idea that is crazy but also great.

A really greazy idea

What if I told you that the side sentence structure is actually the true structure of a German sentence. You're probably like "*Please god, noooo!!*" And I know that sounds grisly but bear with me please.

If you really want to get a handle on word order, you have to look at side sentences. Word order is much stricter in side sentence and it is there that the underlying structure of German really shows.

Instead of thinking of the main sentence as the normal one, we should think of it as a side sentence with two extra slots in the beginning and these slots get filled with stuff you take out of its normal position.

One of the slots, the second one, gets filled with part of the verb, the other is kind of a wild card slot and can take pretty much any one element. Let's do an example.

-
- ... , dass ich heute in die Bar gegangen bin.

I don't want to dive into word order too much so just take my word for it... this is the normal order of these elements and you cannot switch for example heute and **ich** without creating so much tension that the result sounds almost wrong.

Now lets make that into a main sentence. We'll remove the **dass** because it's just a connector and add the two extra slots

-
- [Extra 1] [Extra 2] ich heute in die Bar gegangen bin.

And now lets fill the extra slots. **Extra 2** gets the verb from the end, **extra 1** can take any one thing pretty much.

- [Extra slot 1] [extra slot 2] [natural order of elements]
- [Ich] [bin] ich heute in die Bar gegangen **bin.**
- [Heute] [bin] ich **heute** in die Bar gegangen **bin.**
- [In die Bar] [bin] ich heute **in die Bar** gegangen **bin.**

In a way, all the different main sentence version are just a result of us taking out different elements out of their "natural" position and putting them in the first slot and it's much easier to analyze the side sentence because there are no "*out of line*" slots.

Cool.

Now, when it comes to the position of **nicht**, there's one slot in particular that matters... the verb slot.

Most people think, that the standard position for the verb is the second one. With our way of looking at it here, the verb slot is actually at the very end and in main sentences we're taking out something from that slot and put it into position 2.

And this way of looking at things is the key to the fundamental rule **nicht**.

The one basic rule

In standard lore, they make a distinction between two kinds of **nicht**-negations. One is called element negation and it's done by putting **nicht** in front of the element you want to negate, the other one is called sentence negation, where the sentence as a whole gets negated. And for sentence negation, **nicht** comes at the end... or at least as late as possible.

- Ich werde **nicht morgen** nach Berlin fahren. ("element negation")
- **Tomorrow is not the day** I will go Berlin.
- Ich arbeite heute **nicht**. ("sentence negation")
- **I'm not working today.**

But making this distinction between two kinds of **nicht**-negations with two sets of rules for the position sucks. It makes things more complicated than they are and does NOT reflect the inner workings of the language.

The only, an absolute rule for the position of **nicht** is this:

“Nicht” precedes what it negates.

And that's it.

But what about the sentences with the **nicht** at the end?

- Ich arbeite heute **nicht**.

Isn't this an exception?? Like... **nicht** doesn't precede anything here, right? But this is where our groundwork comes into play. Because **nicht** actually ISN'T at the end. It is in front of the verb slot. Only that the verb slot is empty because we took out the content and moved it into the extra slot.

- Ich **arbeite** heute nachmittag **nicht** [verb slot – empty]

Once we put the sentence into side sentence mode we can see it.

- ..., dass ich heute nachmittag **nicht** [**arbeite**.]

Booom, **nicht** is NOT at the end anymore because under the hood it never was. It just happened to be the last word.

- ..., dass ich heute nachmittag [**arbeite**] **nicht**.... **WRONG!!**

This is super wrong. **Nicht** ALWAYS precedes what it negates so it can NEVER come at the end of a side sentence.

And that's not all. We now also have a perfectly logical reason why **nicht** doesn't come after prefixes or ge-forms or other verbs. Because those sit in the final verb slot.

- Ich schlafe heute [aus] **nicht**... **WRONG!**
- Ich schlafe heute **nicht** [aus]... correct
- Ich habe heute [geschlafen] **nicht**... **WRONG!**
- Ich habe heute **nicht** [geschlafen].
- Ich kann heute [schlafen] **nicht**... **WRONG!**
- Ich kann heute nicht [schlafen].

And it's not only helpful with that. You see, if **nicht** precedes what it negates that also implies that anything coming before **nicht** is NOT negated. And that can help for instance understand the difference between the following two

- Ich schwimme **nicht** gern.
- Ich schwimme gerne **nicht**.

Both are correct but only one is the proper translation for "I don't like swimming". Any idea which one? It's the first one. And when we put them in side sentence mode, it becomes obvious.

- ..., dass ich **nicht** gern schwimme.
- ..., dass ich gern **nicht** schwimme.

The word that expresses the liking is **gern**, and in the second version **gern** comes before **nicht** so it is NOT negated. The second sentence actually means

- I do like not swimming.

So our one basic rule can already clear up quite a bit. And by the way.. it totally holds for the **kein**-negations, too. Because **kein** is nothing other than a contraction of a negation particle and **ein**.

- nicht ein Bier
- n'chein Bier
- nickein Bier
- n'kein Bier
- Hodor.... wait, who said that

Cool.

So this our basic rule. But as awesome as it is, it's not enough to help with the whole scope of the position of **nicht** and all the various "What the hell" moments there are. Just to give you two examples...

- Ich rede mit Maria im Zoo **nicht**.... **super correct :)**
- Ich bin mit Maria im Zoo **nicht**.... **SUPER WRONG :[**
- Ich habe immer noch **nicht** den neuen Song von Rhianna gehört.... **super correct :)**
- Ich habe immer noch **nicht** ihn gehört.... **SUPER WRONG :[**

Tricky stuff right? I mean... whyyyyy. For these things we need to use our brains.

To really understand the positioning of **nicht** and when to put it where, we now need to work with that rule using an open mind and common sense. Yeah, I know... some sort of "If-A-put-**nicht**-here,-if-B-put-it-there" -thing would be easier but it would also be kinda boring. Just [like this famous chocolate.](#)

What? Yes , I did spend some time on Photoshop just for this dumb joke. Oh well, the things I do for laugh.

So, to properly place **nicht**, we need to get an understanding of what I call a **default negation**.

The neutral negation

In German but also in other languages there are more than one way to add a negative to a sentence. What I call neutral negation is the version that does not have a special focus. I guess you could call it “sentence negation” but I’d rather not... I find the term really confusing.

Anyway, here’s an example

- Thomas didn’t check his mails today.
- Thomas didn’t check **HIIIS** mails today.

The first one is a *neutral negation*. There’s no special focus on anything. In the second one on the other hand, the negation specifically targets “his”. That’s what’s being negated, implying that Thomas might have read someone else’s. Probably Maria’s. I mean... it’s her own fault. She could just change her passw... but I digress.

So to really master negation in a language you need to get a feel for what the neutral negation is and how to create special focus.

English, at least in spoken, keeps one structure and relies on aural emphasis for the focusing.

In German it’s a little more complex.

German, too, uses aural emphasis, but also the position of **nicht**, can create special focus. Can, not must.

In longer sentences, several positions can sound neutral depending how you say it. And which positions are how neutral doesn’t only depend on the sentence... it actually friggin’ depends on the context in which the sentence is said, on the intention of the speaker

1. ..., dass **nicht** Thomas gestern mit Maria im Zoo war.
2. ..., dass Thomas **nicht** gestern mit Maria im Zoo war.
3. ... , dass Thomas gestern **nicht** mit Maria im Zoo war.
4. ..., dass Thomas gestern mit Maria **nicht** im Zoo war.
5. ..., dass Thomas gestern mit Maria im Zoo **nicht** war.

Number 1 is not neutral at all and has a clear focus on Thomas, for 2 and 3 it depends on how it’s said and the context of conversation whether it’s a focused negation or not, number 4 is pretty neutral but it implies that Thomas did something with Maria and number 5 is ... pretty much wrong.

1. ..., that it wasn’t Thomas who was at the zoo with Maria yesterday.
2. ... that it wasn’t yesterday that Thomas was at the zoo with Maria.
... that Thomas WASN’T at the zoo with Maria yesterday.
3. ... that it wasn’t Maria with whom Thomas was at the zoo yesterday.
... that Thomas wasn’t at the zoo with Maria yesterday.
4. ... that Thomas wasn’t at the ZOO with Maria yesterday.
... that Thomas wasn’t at the zoo with Maria yesterday. (most neutral)
5. ... (not translatable)

God daaaaamn.... now you're probably like "How am I supposed to learn that." But it's not as bad as it seems. All we need is common sense, and the idea of scenery.

By **scenery** I basically mean the setting, the "world" about which we learn something in the sentence that has the negation. And because that's super abstract, let's do an example.

- **I don't STUDY at the library.**

Using aural emphasis... well... bold font... we've focused the negation specifically on the verb **to study** here. The other elements ("I", "at the library") are NOT touched by the negation. And those elements are **the "scenery"**. Me at the library, that's the scenery we learn something about and what we learn is that studying is NOT what I do there.

So, anything that is not touched by the negation is the **scenery**. And in part two we'll see the power of this scenery stuff because it'll help us clear up everything.

Now you're like "Wait... in part 2? So we have to wait a week?"

Well, actually no... you'll have to wait more than a week :).

Yeah... I know you hate me right now. But seriously, I want part 2 to be good and make sense so I'm not gonna rush it. And I think we've a lot to digest already.

Let me know in the comments if the stuff made sense so far or if you have any questions. Do you think it's any good? Also, what are your experiences with the "standard" book explanation. Does that work for you? And let me know if there are any things in particular that you don't understand about the position of **nicht** so we can talk about it in part 2.

I'm out for now... I wish you a wonderful week, I hope you enjoyed it and see you next time.

Further reading:

If you liked the stuff about side sentence and you want to find out WHY that kind of is the natural structure, then check out part one of my post on word order:

From <<https://yourdailygerman.com/position-nicht-german/>>

NICHT POSITION II

Tuesday, November 6, 2018 12:23 PM

QUESTION

Is a reply "Ich kenne nicht die Antwort." correct?

ANSWER

'nicht' should come last - Ich kenne die Antwort nicht.

The position of 'nicht' is tricky. It will always follow 1. the finite verb (Ich arbeite nicht.) 2. nouns and pronouns used as objects (Ich kenne die Antwort nicht.) 3. specific adverbs of time (Ich mache es heute nicht.)

It will precede: 1. predicate nouns and adjectives (Er ist nicht nett. Er ist nicht mein Freund.) 2. adverbs (Ich mache es nicht gern.) 3. general time adverbs (Wir gehen nicht oft.) 4. prepositional phrases (Wir gehen nicht ins Kino.) 5. elements in final position; infinitives, past participles, separable prefixes (Ich kann nicht helfen.)

It can also precede a word if you want to give special emphasis. (Ich mache es nicht heute, sondern morgen.)

ANSWER 2

The placement of "nicht" can be difficult. The most useful idea that I have come across is this:

In short, "nicht" is always placed in front of the negated element. If the sentence as a whole is negated, this means that the verb is negated, but that has to always occupy the second position and cannot be moved further down. However, the verb is often split into a finite part (conjugated part) in second position and other things that are placed in the end of the sentence, which altogether has been simply named verb box. The "nicht" becomes a part of the verb and is placed in front of the verb box. Sometimes the verb box is empty, then "nicht" will be in end position.

In sentences of the structure "X is Y" (see Paralars1) Y is a predicative. In this case "to be" is only a copula verb that is completed by Y, which is part of the verb and placed in the verb box at the end of the sentence. In the example sentence the predicative is "mein Vater".

Ich sehe dich nicht. (empty verb box, "nicht" at the end)

I do not see you.

Ich sehe dich nicht an. (separable prefix "an" from verb "ansehen" in the verb box)

I do not look at you.

Ich habe dich nicht gesehen. (participle in the verb box)

I have not seen you.

Ich bin nicht dein Vater. (dein Vater is a predicative noun of verb "dein Vater sein")

I am not your father.

Ich bin nicht grün. (grün is a predicative adjective of the verb "grün sein")

I am not green.

I kann nicht schwimmen. (schwimmen is the infinitive full verb to modal verb können)

I can not swim.

More on this here:

<https://yourdailygerman.com/2016/06/23/position-nicht-german/>

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/23034132>>

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/377844>>

PRESENT VERBS I

Thursday, August 30, 2018 12:33 PM

No continuous aspect

Remember that in German, there's no continuous aspect, i.e. there are no separate forms for "I drink" and "I am drinking". There's only one form: *Ich trinke*.
There's no such thing as *Ich bin trinke* or *Ich bin trinken!*

Verb conjugation

Conjugating regular verbs

Here again is the complete table for conjugating regular verbs:

Example: *gehen* (to go)

English person	German example
----------------	----------------

I	ich gehe
---	----------

you (sg. informal)	du gehst
--------------------	----------

he/she/it	er/sie/es geht
-----------	----------------

we	wir gehen
----	-----------

you (pl. informal)	ihr geht
--------------------	----------

they	sie gehen
------	-----------

Notice that the **1st and the 3rd person plural have the same ending**.

The *-h-* in *gehen* tells you that the *-e-* before it will have a "long" pronunciation. It is not pronounced!

Vowel change in some verbs

A few common verbs change the vowel in the **second and third person singular**.

Normally the vowel will change:

- from *a* to *ä*
- from *e* to *i(e)*

person	<i>schlafen</i>	<i>sehen</i>
--------	-----------------	--------------

ich	schlafe	sehe
-----	---------	------

du	schläfst	siehst
----	----------	--------

er/sie/es	schläft	sieht
-----------	---------	-------

wir	schlafen	sehen
-----	----------	-------

ihr	schlaft	seht
-----	---------	------

sie	schlafen	sehen
-----	----------	-------

Other verbs in this skill are

- *fahren* (to ride) — du *fährst*
- *waschen* (to wash) — du *wäschst*

In addition, when a **verb stem ends in -s**, **second and third person singular forms will look**

the same:

- lesen (to read) — du **liest**, er **liest**

This is because the -s- from *du ...-st* and the -s from the verb stem merge.

Wollen and mögen

Wollen (to want) and *mögen* (to like) follow a different conjugation system:

English pronoun **wollen** **mögen**

I want/like	ich	will	mag
you (sg. inf.)	du	willst	magst
he/she/it	er/sie/es	will	mag
we	wir	wollen	mögen
you (pl. inf.)	ihr	wollt	mögt
they	sie	wollen	mögen

Notice that here, the first and third person are the same (plural **and** singular). The vowel in singular is different from the vowel in plural.

How do you like things in German?

Use the verb *mögen* to express that you **like something or someone**.

Mögen cannot be used for verbs!

In a later lesson, you will learn to **use the adverb gern(e) to express that you like doing* something**.

(The similar verb *möchten* can be followed by a verb, but *Ich möchte Fußball spielen* translates as "I would like to play soccer", not "I like playing soccer".)

Mögen is used for things, animals, and people:

- Ich *mag* Bier. (I like beer.)
- Sie *mag* Katzen. (She likes cats.)
- Wir *mögen* dich. (We like you.)
- Ihr *mögt* Bücher. (You like books.)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Verbs%3A-Present-1/tips-and-notes>>

NEUTRUM (DAS)

Friday, August 31, 2018 10:44 AM

"Ist das der Ring?"

Translation: Is that the ring?

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11185492>>

You mean why is it not "Ist der der Ring?".

The answer is that there are two "modes" of the word "das". The first one is used to point on a neutrum gender. The second one is used in this example.

In English if you want to ask about the object, you normally use "it" or "that": "Is it a tree?", "Is that the Statue of Liberty?", "Is that The Ring" (the one that rules them all). So mathematically speaking you are making a statement:

Is "that" = "The Ring"?

and asking the other person to confirm or decline your assumption.

Now to say that in German you also need some "helper word" to put on the left side. And this word is usually "das" ("that") or "es" (it). Think of it that neutrum is the default gender to minimize the error if you are mistaken. So you are not sure about the object, and you use neutral assumption:

Ist "das" = "Der Ring"?

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11185492>>

POSESSIVE PRONOUNS

Monday, September 3, 2018 6:50 AM

Personal Pronouns in the Nominative Case

A pronoun is a word that represents a noun, like *er* does for *der Mann*. In the nominative case, the personal pronouns are simply the grammatical persons you already know: *ich, du, er/sie/es, wir, ihr,* and *sie*.

Possessive pronouns

German uses possessive pronouns similar to the English ones. For example "my" is *mein* in German, "his" is *sein*, and "her" is *ihr*.

personal pronouns possessive pronouns

ich	mein
du	dein
er/es	sein
sie (feminine)	ihr
wir	unser
ihr	euer
sie (plural)	ihr

Remember that in German, *eu* sounds like "boy", and the ending *-er* normally roughly sounds like "ma".

Nominative forms

Unlike English, these possessive pronouns change their endings in the same way as the indefinite article *ein*.

- mein Bruder (ein Bruder)
- meine Mutter (eine Mutter)

This is mostly straightforward (just append the correct ending according to the noun). There is a slight irregularity: *euer* does not become *euere*, but *eure* (it loses an internal *-e*-).

The following table has the forms in the nominative case. These are used for subjects, as in

- *Meine Katze* ist super. (My cat is great.)

	der Hund	das Insekt	die Katze	die Hunde
indef. article	ein	ein	eine	(keine)
ich	mein	mein	meine	meine
du	dein	dein	deine	deine
er/es	sein	sein	seine	seine
sie (fem.)	ihr	ihr	ihre	ihre
wir	unser	unser	unsere	unsere
ihr	euer	euer	eure	eure
sie (plural)	ihr	ihr	ihre	Ihre

** MASCULINE/NEUTER= NO e ADDED

** FEMININE/PLURAL = e ADDED

As you might notice, *ihr* has several different functions, so make sure you understand the context it is

used in.

Demonstrative Pronouns

The demonstrative pronouns in English are: **this, that, these, and those**. In German, in Nominative and Accusative, the **demonstrative pronouns are the same as the definite articles**.

That means, *der*, *die* and *das* can also mean "that (one)" or "this (one)" depending on the gender of the respective noun, and "*die*" (plural) can mean "these" or "those."

- **Der** ist komisch! (*That one* is strange!)
- Meine Kinder? **Die** sind in England. (My kids? *They/Those* are in England.)

When spoken, the definite articles can serve a similar function:

- **Der** Junge liest eine Zeitung, **der** Junge liest ein Buch.
- *This* boy is reading a newspaper, *that* boy is reading a book.

The articles would be stressed in that case.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Possessive-Pronouns/tips-and-notes>>

NOTES*****

DEIN VS EURE

When you refer to one person (or something) you use 'Dein'/'Deine' (Deine for 'Die' nouns and 'Dein' for 'Der'/'Das' nouns) - But if you refer to more than one person you use 'Eure'

deine are those belonging to *du* (i.e. to one person whom you know well)

eure are those belonging to *ihr* (i.e. to several people whom you know well)

Eure is the possessive pronoun for something belonging to *ihr* ("you plural" i.e. to several people whom you know well) for example: Eure hund ist klein = Your dog is small, (You being plural 3rd person informal), or "You people's dog is small"

Ihre is the possessive pronoun for something belonging to *sie* (fem 2nd person or plural 3rd person formal.) in the nominative case For example: Die Katzen trinken ihre Milch. The cats are drinking her/their milk, which one is correct will be entirely based on context.

I know it's a bit late and you probably figured it out already, besides the fact that I'm not a native speaker so i might be entirely wrong :P ... But perhaps this is helpful for someone else!

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/24599506>>

ihre" (small i) means "her" or "their".

"*Ihre*" (capital I) means "your" when you are speaking formally - perhaps to your boss or to a group of strangers.

"*deine*" means "your" when you are speaking informally to one person - perhaps to your brother.

"eure" means "your" when you are speaking informally to several people - perhaps to your children.

In all cases, those are the forms used when the thing possessed is grammatically feminine or is plural, and in the nominative or accusative cases. (For example, *deine Kuh ist hübsch*, feminine singular nominative; *ich sehe eure Katzen*, plural accusative.)

For other genders and cases, the ending -e can change to something else, e.g. "Ihrer, deinem, euren,".

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/9348303>>

In nominative case, the form of the 1st pers. pl. possessive pronoun (for neut. / masc.) is *unser* in attributive position and (for neut.) *unseres* in predicative position, hence:

(here for neuter nouns)

Das ist unser Haus.

Das Haus (dort) ist unseres.

If you add an adjective, said adjective needs to follow mixed inflection (in attributive position):

Das ist unser schönes Haus.

what is the difference between Euer and Eure?

Euer Kind, eure Kinder. Euer =singular, eure = plural.

Actually, when it comes to the nominative case, euer is used with masculine/neutral singular nouns, while eure is used with feminine singular nouns plus every plural noun (since every plural noun goes with the feminine article Die)

die Villa (the villa, feminine); die Villen (the villas)

eure Villa = your villa (more than one owner)

eure Villen = your villas (more than one owner and more than one villa)

NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS

Tuesday, September 4, 2018 12:08 PM

Some other pronouns

Some other words can function as pronouns.

The following ones change their endings like definite articles:

	der	das
this/these	dieser	dieses
every	jeder	jedes
some	mancher	manches
die (fem.)	die (pl.)	
diese	diese	
jede	--	
manche	Manche	

- *Dieser Junge isst, dieser (Junge) trinkt.*
- *This boy eats, that (boy/one) drinks.*
- *Jedes Kind mag Pizza. (Every kid likes pizza.)*
- *Manche Kinder mögen Käse. (Some kids like cheese.)*

Viel* vs. *viele

These roughly correspond to English "much/many". Use *viel* with uncountable nouns, *viele* with countable ones.

- Ich trinke **viel** Wasser.
- Ich habe **viele** Hunde.

Alles* oder *nichts

Just like *nicht* (not) has a look-alike *nichts* (nothing), *alle* (all) has *alles* (everything) as a counterpart.

- Ich esse **nicht**. (I do not eat.)
- Ich esse **nichts**. (I eat nothing.)
- Ich esse **alles**. (I eat everything.)
- Ich esse **alle** (Orangen). (I eat all (oranges).)

Ein paar vs. ein Paar

Ein paar (lowercase *p*) means "a few", "some" or "a couple (of)" (only in the sense of **at least two, not exactly two!**).

Ein Paar (uppercase *P*) means "a pair (of)" and is only used for things that typically come in pairs of two, e.g. *ein Paar Schuhe* (a pair of shoes).

So this is quite similar to English "a couple" (a pair) vs. "a couple of" (some).

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Nominative-Pronouns/tips-and-notes>>

You know how the word for "the" has to match the gender of the noun?

der Mann = "the man"

die Frau = "the woman"

das Auto = "the car"

Well, the word for "this [something]" has to match the gender too. You will notice that the endings are the same as for the forms of "the".

dieser Mann = "this man"

diese Frau = "this woman"

dieses Auto = "this car"

- One thing that is confusing at first is that there's a difference between "this [something]" and just "this" without a noun after it. If you don't have a noun after it you can use **dies**, regardless of the gender of what you're talking about. If you said the sentence **Dies ist stark!** you could be talking about anything.
- If you use the form of "this" with endings *without* a noun, e.g. **Dieses ist stark!** then it can only refer to something with the matching gender (here neuter). Translated, it means something like "this one". It has to be clear from context what you're talking about, otherwise (as in English) someone is likely to ask "this what?".

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/26887108>>

"beide" and not "beiden"

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/822476>>

It's "beide" when it's "both" in the nominative and accusative *without* an article like the sentence above, "Beide mögen Kaffee" or "Ich mag beide."

It's "beiden" in the dative case when there's no article as in "Mit beiden Händen" or "Gib beiden Menschen Kaffee.", etc.

It's also "beiden" when it follows the plural definite article as in "Die beiden sind groß." It's like that in all

cases: Nominative: die beiden Accusative: die beiden Dative: den beiden Genitive: der beiden

And then there's "beides"

"beide" is used in the plural, for **countable** objects:

"Soll ich Mama oder Papa holen?" - "Beide **sollen** kommen!" "Das Radio und das Grammophon standen im Freien, beide **wurden** nass vom Regen."

"beides" is used in the singular, for uncountable objects or abstract objects:

"Magst du Ketchup oder Mayo auf die Pommes?" - "Beides **mussdrauf!**" "Was machst du lieber: Geschirr spülen oder Wäsche bügeln?" - "Das **ist** beides ätzend!"

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/822476>>

BEIDE

Tuesday, September 11, 2018 2:41 PM

It's "beide" when it's "both" in the nominative and accusative *without* an article like the sentence above, "Beide mögen Kaffee" or "Ich mag beide."

It's "beiden" in the dative case when there's no article as in "Mit beiden Händen" or "Gib beiden Menschen Kaffee.", etc.

It's also "beiden" when it follows the plural definite article as in "Die beiden sind groß." It's like that in all cases: Nominative: die beiden Accusative: die beiden Dative: den beiden Genitive: der beiden

And then there's "beides"

"beide" is used in the plural, for **countable** objects:

"Soll ich Mama oder Papa holen?" - "Beide **sollen** kommen!" "Das Radio und das Grammophon standen im Freien, beide **wurden** nass vom Regen."

"beides" is used in the singular, for uncountable objects or abstract objects:

"Magst du Ketchup oder Mayo auf die Pommes?" - "Beides **mussdrauf!**" "Was machst du lieber: Geschirr spülen oder Wäsche bügeln?" - "Das **ist** beides ätzend!"

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/822476>> }

BEIDE V BEIDES

They're pretty much interchangeable. The reason "beides sind richtig" returned only 35 results is that it is an incorrect construction. "Beides" takes a singular verb, however counterintuitive that may be.

From <<https://forum.wordreference.com/threads/beide-beides.37546/>>

First let me decline "die beiden Menschen" and "beide Menschen":

die beiden Menschen (nom.)
der beiden Menschen (gen.)
den beiden Menschen (dat.)
die beiden Menschen (acc.)

beide Menschen
beider Menschen
beiden Menschen
beide Menschen

I'd translate "die beiden Menschen" as "both of the men/people/human beings/etc.",

whereas "beides" would mean "either":

Beides ist richtig.
Both (ways) are correct.
Either (way) is correct.

Beide sind richtig.
Both of them are correct.
Either (way) is correct.

Got it? That's a bit difficult.

From <<https://forum.wordreference.com/threads/beide-beides.37546/>>

DIESER

Monday, September 24, 2018 2:02 PM

Well, "dieser" can be a determiner (so it indicates case and gender of a noun phrase), or a pronoun.

In each instance, it sort-of declines similarly to the definite article "the". So:

Nom: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = dieser/diese/dieses/diese

Acc: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = diesen/diese/dieses/diese

Dat: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = diesem/dieser/diesem/diesen

Gen: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = dieses/dieser/dieses/dieser

So your "dieser" and "diesen" are up there, too.

When used as a pronoun, "dieses" is often replaced by "dies". Also, "dies" can be used whatever the gender or number, in the sense of "this/these", so:

Dies sind meine Äpfel (these are my apples) Dies ist meine Uhr (this is my watch).

As a determiner, "dies" sometimes replaces "dieses" in writing, in the Neuter Nom/Acc, too.

Genug von dieser Grammatik!

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/330432>>

MAG

Wednesday, September 12, 2018 5:11 AM

mogen is not a German word - I suppose you mean *mögen* (and if you can't type that, use *ae oe ue ss* to replace ä ö ü ß: *moegen*).

mögen is the infinitive or dictionary form, and is also the form used with *wir* and *sie* (they) and *Sie*.

But the form for *er, sie, es* is *mag*:

- *ich mag*
- *du magst*
- *er, sie, es mag*
- *wir mögen*
- *ihr mögt*
- *sie, Sie mögen*

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/9923987>>

CASE TABLE

Monday, September 24, 2018 2:06 PM

Definite article

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative	der kleine Mann	die kleine Frau	das kleine Kind	die kleinen Kinder
Accusative	den kleinen Mann	die kleine Frau	das kleine Kind	die kleinen Kinder
Dative	dem kleinen Mann	der kleinen Frau	dem kleinen Kind	den kleinen Kindern
Genitive	des kleinen Manns	der kleinen Frau	des kleinen Kinds	der kleinen Kinder

Note: The same endings apply after *jeder/dieser/jener/welcher/solcher/mancher*.

Indefinite article

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative	ein junger Mann	eine junge Frau	ein junges Kind	meine jungen Kinder
Accusative	einen jungen Mann	eine junge Frau	ein junges Kind	meine jungen Kinder
Dative	einem jungen Mann	einer jungen Frau	einem jungen Kind	meinen jungen Kindern
Genitive	eines jungen Manns	einer jungen Frau	eines jungen Kinds	meiner jungen Kinder

Note: The same endings apply after *kein* and the possessive pronouns: *mein/dein/sein/ihr/unser/Ihr/euer*.

No article

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative	junger Mann	junge Frau	junges Kind	junge Kinder
Accusative	jungen Mann	junge Frau	junges Kind	junge Kinder
Dative	jungem Mann	junger Frau	jungem Kind	jungen Kindern
Genitive	jungen Manns	junger Frau	jungen Kinds	junger Kinder

Personal pronouns

	I	you *	he	she	it	we	you *	they	you *
Nominative	ich	du	er	sie	es	wir	ihr	sie	Sie
Accusative	mich	dich	ihn	sie	es	uns	euch	sie	Sie
Dative	mir	dir	ihm	ihr	ihm	uns	euch	ihnen	Ihnen

* du = you (talking to one friend)

* ihr = you (talking to two or more friends)

* Sie = you (talking politely to one or more adults)

Interrogative pronouns

Nominative	wer	who?
Accusative	wen	whom?
Dative	wem	to whom?
Genitive	wessen	whose?

Prepositions and their associated cases

Accusative Dative		Genitive Accusative or Dative	
bis	aus	statt	an
durch	außer	trotz	auf
für	bei	während	hinter
gegen	gegenüber	wegen	in
ohne	mit	++	neben
um	nach		über
	seit		unter
	von		vor
	zu		zwischen

From <<http://esl.fis.edu/learners/fis/german/kasus/caseTables.htm>>

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS INFLECTION

Wednesday, September 12, 2018 5:21 AM

Definition: Demonstrative pronouns have the same function and decline the same way as definite articles. They correspond to English pronouns such as :

this	dieser
some	mancher
each, every	jeder
such	solcher
that	jener
which	welcher

Inflection

The pronouns dieser and jener are inflected in the same way. In German, the demonstrative adjectives (der, die, das), and (dieser, diese, dieses) with the noun dropped are used as demonstrative pronouns with the exception that the dative plural of the first group, der, as a pronoun becomes denen. The demonstrative pronouns followed by hier ("here") and da or dort (both meaning "there") are used to indicate "this" (near the speaker) and "that" (away from the speaker).

Masculine Feminine Plural

Nominative	der	die	die
Accusative	den	die	die
Dative	dem	der	denen
Genitive	dessen	deren	deren

Neuter

Nominative	das
Accusative	das
Dative	dem
Genitive	dessen

Masculine Feminine Neuter

Nominative	dieser	diese	dieses
Accusative	diesen	diese	dieses
Dative	diesem	dieser	diesem
Genitive	dieses	dieser	dieses

Plural

Nominative	diese	this/ these
Accusative	diese	this/ these
Dative	diesen	to this/ these
Genitive	dieser	of this/ these

NEGATION II

Sunday, September 16, 2018 12:07 AM

German Negatives

There are different ways to negate expressions in German (much like in English you can use "no" in some cases, and "does not" in others). The German adverb *nicht* (not) is used very often, but sometimes you need to use *kein* (not a).

Nicht

As mentioned in the lesson "Not", you should use *nicht* in the following situations:

- Negating a **noun that has a definite article** like *der Junge*(the boy) in *Das ist nicht der Junge.* (That is not the boy).
- Negating a **noun that has a possessive pronoun** like *mein Glas* (my glass) in *Das ist nicht mein Glas.* (That is not my glass).
- Negating **the verb**: *Ich trinke nicht.* (I do not drink.).
- Negating **an adverb or adverbial phrase**. For instance, *Ich tanze nicht oft.* (I do not dance often)
- Negating **an adjective that is used with sein** (to be): *Ich bin nicht hungrig.* (I am not hungry).

For details, and to learn where to put *nicht* in a sentence, refer to the "Not" lesson.

Kein

Simply put, ***kein* is composed of *k + ein*** and placed where the indefinite article would be in a sentence. **If you want to negate *ein*, use *kein*.**

Just like *mein* and the other possessive pronouns, ***kein* changes its ending like *ein*.**

For instance, look at the positive and negative statement about these two nouns:

- Er ist ein Mann. (He is a man) — Sie ist kein Mann. (She is not a/no man.)
- Ich habe eine Katze. (I have a cat.) — Ich habe keine Katze. (I have no cat.)

Here are the endings of the indefinite article so far:

	masc	neut	fem	plural
nominative	ein	ein	eine	---
accusative	einen	ein	eine	---

Here is the list of the respective *kein* forms:

	masc	neut	fem	plural
nominative	kein	kein	keine	keine
accusative	keinen	kein	keine	keine

***Kein* is also used for negating nouns that have no article:** *Er hat Brot.* (He has bread.) versus *Er hat kein Brot.* (He has no bread.).

As a general rule:

- If you can use "not a/no" in English, use *kein*.
- If you need to use "not", use *nicht*.

Nicht vs. Nichts

Nicht is an adverb and is useful for negations. On the other

hand, *nichts* (nothing/anything) is a pronoun and its meaning is different from that of *nicht*.

- Ich esse *nicht*. (I do not eat.)
- Ich esse *nichts*. (I eat nothing.)

Using *nicht* simply negates a fact, and is less overarching than *nichts*. For example, *Der Schüler lernt nicht*. (The student does not learn.) is less extreme than *Der Schüler lernt nichts*. (The student does not learn anything.).

Keiner, keine, keines

In German, "nobody" can be expressed in several ways.

As long as it refers to people, *niemand* works just fine:

- Niemand schläft. (Nobody sleeps.)

There is also *keiner*. It changes endings like the definite articles:

	masc.	neut.	fem.	plural
nominative	der	das	die	die
accusative	den	das	die	die
	masc.	neut.	fem.	plural
nominative	keiner	keines	keine	keine
accusative	keinen	keines	keine	keine

For now, we teach only the default version (which is *masculine* in German):

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Negatives/tips-and-notes>>

ADVERBS

Sunday, September 16, 2018 12:07 AM

How do you like things in German?

Use the verb *mögen* to express that you like something or someone, and use the adverb *gern(e)* to express that you like doing something.

Mögen is used for things, animals, and people:

- Ich mag Bier. (I like beer.)
- Sie mag Katzen. (She likes cats.)
- Wir mögen dich. (We like you.)
- Ihr mögt Bücher. (You like books.)

Please refer to lesson "Present 1" for more details on *mögen*.

Gern(e) is used for verbs/activities:

- Ich trinke gern(e) Bier. (I like to drink beer/I like drinking beer.)
- Er spielt gern(e) Fußball. (He likes to play soccer/He likes playing soccer.)
- Wir lesen gern(e) Bücher. (We like to read books/We like reading books.)
- Sie schreibt gern(e) Briefe. (She likes to write letters/She likes writing letters.)

Position of gerne

If you're not sure **where to put gern(e)**: It goes to the same position as *oft* (often).

- Ich trinke **oft** Bier. (I drink beer often.)
- Ich trinke **gern** Bier. (I like to drink beer.)

Gern/gerne, allein/alleine

What's the difference between **gern and gerne**? They're just variations of the same word. There's no difference in terms of meaning or style. You can use whichever you like best. The same goes for *allein(e)*.

Position of auch

Auch corresponds to English "also, too".

The positioning follows different rules in both languages. Soon you will learn more about the peculiarities of German sentence structure. For now, remember that *noch* takes roughly the same position as *nicht*. When both occur together, *noch* will come before *nicht*.

Consider these two examples to get a first idea about this:

- Ich laufe. Du läufst **auch**. Er läuft **nicht**. Sie läuft **auch nicht**.
- Ich komme aus China. Du kommst **auch** aus China. Er kommt **nicht** aus China. Sie kommt **auch nicht** aus China.

Here's one more adverb, to see how they work together:

- Ich trinke **oft** Bier. Du trinkst **auch oft** Bier. Er trinkt **nicht oft** Bier. Sie trinkt **auch**

nicht oft Bier.

For reasons that will become clearer soon, *Sie kommt aus China auch.* is **not a valid sentence** in German.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Adverbs-1/tips-and-notes>>

STUFF

Thursday, September 20, 2018 3:52 PM

Combining stuff

German is well known for its long words that can be made up on the go by concatenating existing words. In this skill you will learn one very simple and commonly used way of forming compounds: adding *-zeug* ("stuff") to existing words.

Remember that the last element determines gender and plural. So all new words in this lesson will be neuter.

OK, because you asked: the longest "real" German word (so far) is:

- Rindfleisch-etikettierungs-überwachungs-aufgaben-übertragungs-gesetz
(Without the hyphens. We had to add those in order to be able to show the whole word...)

It's a law on how to transfer tasks about the monitoring of the labeling of beef. At least that's what the word says.

If you enjoyed this, check out "Rhabarberbarbara" on Youtube.
No, words like this don't normally happen in German :)

How much stuff?

In English, you can't count "stuff" -- you can't use the plural "stuffs" or say that "there are three stuffs on the floor". Instead, "stuff" is a collective noun, referring to a group of things but used in the singular: "there is stuff on the floor".

Some German *-zeug* words can work like this as well -- for example, *Spielzeug* and *Werkzeug* in the singular, without an article, mean "toys" and "tools", which are plural in English.

Those words can also be used in a countable way: *ein Spielzeug*, *zwei Werkzeuge* "one toy, two tools". So "the tools" could be either *das Werkzeug* or *die Werkzeuge* -- the former would view the tools as a group, the latter would consider them individually.

Look out for whether there is an indefinite article or number before the singular word to see whether it's used countably or uncountably.

If there's a possessive word or a definite article before such a noun in the singular, it could be either: *mein Werkzeug ist neu* could mean either "My tool is new" or "My tools are new", for example; similarly with *das Werkzeug ist neu* which could be either "The tools is

new" or "The tools are new".

(An English word that works similarly is "fruit" -- "my fruit" could refer to just one apple, or it could refer to two apples and a banana all together, depending on whether "fruit" is used countably or uncountably.)

Other *-zeug* words are always regular countable words, such as *Flugzeug* "airplane" or *Feuerzeug* "lighter".

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Stuff/tips-and-notes>>

AKK PRONOUNS

Pronouns

Personal Pronouns in the Accusative Case

Aside from the nominative case, most of the German **pronouns** are **declined** according to case. Like in English, when the **subject becomes the object, the pronoun changes**. For instance, *ich* changes to *mich* (accusative object) as in *Sie sieht mich.* (She sees me.).

Nominative (subject) Accusative (object)

ich (I)	mich (me)
du (you singular informal)	dich (you singular informal)
er (he) sie (she) es (it)	ihn (him) sie (her) es (it)
wir (we)	uns (us)
ihr (you plural informal)	euch (you plural informal)
sie (they)	sie (them)

Notice that apart from masculine singular, the **third person forms are the same** in nominative and accusative. The masculine form, which does change, has the same endings as the definite article (*der* becomes *den*).

Possessive Pronouns in the Accusative Case

You might remember from the lesson "Personal Pronouns" that German possessive pronouns change their endings like the indefinite article:

- *ein Hund, mein Hund*
- *eine Katze, meine Katze*

This extends to all cases. You already know that **in the accusative case, only masculine singular changes**:

- **Ein Hund** schläft. Er sieht **einen Hund**.

but:

- **Eine Katze** schläft. Sie sieht **eine Katze**. (no change)

So, if you see *einen, meinen, unseren* and so forth with a singular noun, you will know two things:

- the noun is masculine
- the noun is in the accusative case (probably the object of the sentence)

Consider this example:

- Meinen Hund mag die Frau nicht.

It is clear here that the dog must be the object (accusative). So actually the woman does not like the dog.

Here is the table of possessive pronouns for the accusative case:

Accusative **derHund** **dasInsekt** **dieKatze** **dieHunde**

	def. article	einen	ein	eine	(keine)
ich		meinen	mein	meine	meine
du		deinen	dein	deine	deine
er/es		seinen	sein	seine	seine
sie (fem.)		ihren	ihr	ihre	ihre
wir		unseren	unser	unsere	unsere
ihr		euren	euer	eure	eure

sie (plural) **ihr**en **ihr** **ihr**e **ihr**e

Other declining words

Viel vs. viele

These roughly correspond to English "much/many". Use **viel** with uncountable nouns, **viele** with countable ones.

- Ich trinke **viel** Wasser.
- Ich habe **viele** Hunde.

Viele changes endings like the articles. But because the plural forms are the same for nominative and accusative, for now it will look always the same.

Jeder

Jeder changes endings like definite articles:

- die Frau, jede Frau
- das Mädchen, jedes Mädchen
- der Mann, jeder Mann — **den** Mann, **jeden** Mann (accusative)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Accusative-Pronouns/tips-and-notes>>

SPLIT VERBS

Wednesday, October 3, 2018 5:27 AM

learning target

Aim of this section is to learn how to use a special group of German verbs: separable verbs

separable verb use of the verb in present tense

(infinitive)

aufstehen	Ich stehe um 6 Uhr auf .
fernsehen	Wir sehen gerne fern .
zuhören	Er hört ihr zu .
ausgehen	Ich gehe morgen aus .
nachdenken	Sie denkt viel nach .
zurückgeben	Ich gebe Ihnen das Buch zurück .

rules

Conjugation of separable verbs in present tense

In section "Konjugation der Verben im Präsens" we learned already how to conjugate "normal" verbs. With this knowledge it's just an easy step to conjugate separable verbs. Just do these three steps:

- before you conjugate separate the **prefix** (Vorsilbe) from the **verb**
- put the prefix (Vorsilbe) **at the end** of the sentence
- conjugate the verb in the same way you did in section "Konjugation der Verben im Präsens"

example:

ausgehen	Ich gehe heute mit meiner Freundin aus .
prefix / verb	Subject / conjugated verb / rest of the sentence / prefix.

Situations where separable verbs are not separated

There are four situations where separable verbs stay together. Don't worry about these rules now. We will cover them later when we speak about the single topics.

situation	example	translation
in connection with modal verbs	Du kannst nicht ausgehen .	You can't go out.
in the "will-future tense"	Ich werde ausgehen .	I will go out.
in dependent clauses	Tom sagt, dass er ausgeht .	Tom says that he goes out.
in the perfect tense	Ich bin gestern ausgegangen .	I went out yesterday.

Which verbs are separable and which not?

The problem is, not all verbs which consist of prefix + verb are separable. There are three groups: separable verbs, inseparable verbs and dual verbs which are both - depending on the meaning.

separable verbs			inseparable verbs			dual verbs		
prefix	examples	translation	prefix	examples	translation	prefix	examples	translation
		n						
ab	abholen abheben	pick up take off	ant	antworten	answer	durch	durchdringe n (sep.)	penetrate eat through
an	anfangen anrufen	begin call, phone	be	bekomme n besuchen	get visit	durchfresse	durchfresse n (insep.)	
auf	aufhören aufstehen	stop get up	emp	empfange n empfehlen	receive recommen d	hinter	hinterlassen (sep.)	allow to s.o. to go behing
aus	ausgehen aussehen	go out look, appear	ent	entdecken entfernen	discover remove	hinterlassen	hinterlassen (insep.)	leave
bei	beibringen beitreten	teach join	er	erkennen erholen	recognize recover	über	übersetzen (sep.)	ferry across translate
ein	einkaufen einschlafen	shop fall asleep	ge	gehören gewinnen	belong win	um	umziehen (sep.)	change clothes
fern	fernsehen	watch tv	miss	missbrauc hen	abuse missunder	umarmen	umarmen (insep.)	hug
fort	fortgehen fortsetzen	go away continue		missverst ehen	stand	unter	untergehen (sep.)	sink interrupt
her	herkomme n herstellen	come from manufactu re	ver	vergessen versprech en	forget promise	unterbreche	unterbreche n (insep.)	
hin	hinfahren hinstellen	drive there	zer	zerbreche n zerstören	break destroy	wider	widertönen (sep.)	echo contradict
		place	The underlined prefixes cover 95% of all inseparable verbs and you should keep them in mind.			wieder	wiedersehen (sep.)	see again represent
los	losfahren loswerden	drive off get rid off					wiedergeben (insep.)	
mit	mitbringen mitnehmen	bring along take along						
nach	nachdenke n nachfragen	think ask after nachfragen						
statt	stattfinden stattgeben	take place grant						
vor	vorhaben vorstellen	have planned imagine						
vorbei	vorbeikom	come by						

		men
weg	weggehen	go away
	wegnehme	take away
	n	
zu	zuhören	listen
	zugeben	admit
zurück	zurückgabe	give back
	n	come
	zurückkom	back
	men	
zusammen	zusammenf	summariz
	assen	e
	zusammen	come
	kommen	together

Further

prefixes (seldom

used):

da, dabei, daran,
empor, entgegen,
entlang, fehl, fest,
gegenüber, gleich,
herauf, heraus,
hinweg, hinzu,
zurecht, zwischen



From <http://www.deutschseite.de/grammatik/trennbare_verben/trennbare_verben.html>

CONJUNCTIONS

Wednesday, October 10, 2018 10:26 AM

German Conjunctions

A conjunction like *wenn* (when) or *und* (and) connects two parts of a sentence together.

Coordinating conjunctions

Coordinating conjunctions form a group of coordinators (like *und* (and), *aber* (but)), which combine two items of equal importance; here, each clause can stand on its own and the word order does not change.

- Ich mag Schokolade. Sie mag Pizza.
- Ich mag Schokolade **und** sie mag Pizza.

Examples: *und*, *oder*, *aber*, *denn*

Subordinating conjunctions

Subordinating conjunctions combine an independent clause with a dependent clause; the dependent clause cannot stand on its own and its word order will be different than if it did. In these **subordinate clauses**, the verb switches from the second position to the last.

- Ich bin gesund. Ich **laufe** oft.
- Ich bin gesund, **weil** ich oft **laufe**.
- Ich spreche gut Deutsch. Ich **lerne** oft Deutsch.
- Ich spreche gut Deutsch, **weil** ich oft Deutsch **lerne**.

Examples: *weil*, *wenn*, *dass*, *obwohl*

Correlative conjunctions

Correlative conjunctions work in pairs to join sentence parts of equal importance. For instance, *entweder...oder*(either...or) is such a pair and can be used like this: *Der Schuh ist entweder blau oder rot.* (This shoe is either blue or red.).

In German, conjunctions do not change with the case (i.e. they are not declinable).

- Du trägst einen Rock. Du trägst eine Hose.
- Du trägst **entweder** einen Rock **oder** eine Hose.
- Du wäschst den Rock. Du trägst eine Hose.
- **Entweder** du wäschst den Rock, **oder** du trägst eine Hose.
- Du wäschst **entweder** den Rock **oder** (du) trägst eine Hose.

Examples: *entweder ... oder*, *nicht nur ... sondern auch*, *weder ... noch*

Sondern

Sondern works like "but ... instead" in English. It only takes the element that is different:

- Ich trage *kein Kleid*. Ich trage *eine Hose*.
- Ich trage *kein Kleid*, **sondern** *eine Hose*.
- Sie kommt nicht *aus Deutschland*. Sie kommt *aus China*.
- Sie kommt nicht *aus Deutschland*, **sondern** *aus China*.

CONJUNCTIONS

Thursday, October 25, 2018 4:47 PM

Conjunctions in German

Coordinate, subordinate and compound conjunctions

- [1 Coordinate Conjunctions \(Koordinierende Konjunktionen\)](#)
- [2 Subordinate Conjunctions](#)
- [3 Compound Conjunctions](#)

Coordinate conjunctions	Subordinate conjunctions			Compound conjunctions
aber	als	ob	sowie	weder .. noch
beziehungsweise	bevor	obwohl	während	anstatt..zu
ise	bis	seit	d	entweder...oder
denn	dass	seitdem	weil	sowohl ... als
oder	damit	m	wenn	(auch)
sondern	nachdem	sobald	wie	sowohl ... wie
und		sofern	wo	(auch)
		soweit		je ... desto
				zwar ... aber

Coordinate Conjunctions (Koordinierende Konjunktionen)

The coordinate conjunctions do not modify the position of the verb in the clause. The most common ones are:

Coordinate conjunction	Meaning
aber	but
beziehungsweise	better put respectively
denn	because then

<u>oder</u>	or
<u>sondern</u>	but but rather
<u>und</u>	and

aber

It means "but".

Die Hose ist schön, aber zu klein

The pants are pretty but too small

Er ist klug, aber faul

He's smart but lazy

Das Angebot ist super, aber wir haben keine Zeit

The offer is great but we don't have time

beziehungsweise

It means "better put" or "respectively" and is abbreviated often as bzw.

Ein Auto habe ich beziehungsweise meine Frau hat eins

I have a car or, better put, my wife has one.

Die Disko ist heute billiger für Frauen und Männer. Es kostet 7 Euro bzw. 10 Euro.

The disco is cheaper today for women and men. It costs 7 and 10 Euros, respectively

denn

It means then/because, etc.

Ich weinte, denn ich hatte kein Geld

I cried because I didn't have money

Synonyms: weil

oder

Means "or"

Ich weiß nicht, ob ich lachen oder weinen soll

I don't know whether I should laugh or cry

Wer fängt an, du oder ich?

Who starts, you or me?

sondern

Means "but" or "but rather"

Das Haus ist nicht alt, sondern neu

The house is not old but new

und

It means "and"

Meine Freunde und ich wollen ins Kino gehen

My friends and I want to go to the cinema

Subordinate Conjunctions

Subordinate conjunctions help to form [subordinate clauses](#). One of the most interesting things about German is that the verb is placed in the last position of the clause in subordinate clauses (Main article: [Sentence structure in German](#))

Subordinate conjunction	Meaning
<u>als</u>	when
<u>bevor</u>	before
<u>bis</u>	until
<u>dass</u>	that
<u>damit</u>	so that
<u>nachdem</u>	after
<u>ob</u>	whether if
<u>obwohl</u>	although
<u>seitdem</u>	since
<u>sobald</u>	as soon as
<u>sofern</u>	provided that as long as
<u>soweit</u>	insofar as
<u>sowie</u>	as soon as
<u>während</u>	while
<u>weil</u>	because
<u>wenn</u>	if
<u>wie</u>	how
<u>wo</u>	where

als

It means "when" if it is a subordinate conjunction. Careful: It's used only in the past and when the past event only took place one time (temporal conjunction)

Als ich Kind war, wohnte ich in München

When I was a child, I lived in Munich

"Als" is also used for the construction of the comparative of superiority:

Er ist stärker als ich

He is stronger than me

bevor

It means "before" (temporal conjunction to show previous action or event)

Woran denkst du, bevor du einschlafst?

What do you think about before you fall asleep?

bis

It means "until" (temporal conjunction to show subsequent action or event) "Bis" can act as a subordinate conjunction:

Warte, bis du gesund bist

Wait until you are healthy

or as a preposition:

Bis in den Tod

until death

dass

It can be translated into English as "that" and is used to start a new subordinate clause.

Ich denke, dass die deutsche Sprache kompliziert ist

I think that the German language is complicated

dass vs das

Sometimes English speakers confuse "das" (relative pronoun) and "dass" (conjunction). The reason for this is because we use "that" for both words.

"das" is used to make relative clauses, which are used to give more information about a noun (Example: the noun "book"):

Das ist das Buch, das ich gerade lese

This is the book that I am reading

dass is to make common subordinate clauses where more information is given with a verb (Example: the verb to say)

Ich habe dir gesagt, dass er heute kommt

I told you that he's coming today

damit

It means "**so that**" (conjunction of purpose)

Ich spare, damit meine Familie einen Mercedes kaufen kann

I am saving money so that my family can buy a Mercedes

nachdem

It means "after" (temporal conjunction)

Nachdem wir aufgestanden waren, haben wir gepackt

After we got up, we packed our bags

ob

It means "whether/if" in the context of indirect questions or to show doubt.

Er hat dich gefragt, ob du ins Kino gehen möchtest

He asked you if you wanted to go to the cinema

Common mistakes: Confusing the use of ob and wenn

obwohl

It means "although" or "even though" (concessive conjunction)

Ich mag Kinder, obwohl ich keine habe

I like kids even though I don't have any

seit

It means "since" (temporal conjunction). Seit can act as a subordinate conjunction:

Ich wohne in Köln, seit ich geboren bin

I've been living in Cologne since I was born

or as a preposition (seit + Dative):

Er wohnt jetzt seit 2 Jahren in diesem Haus

He's been living in this house for two years

seitdem

It means "since" (temporal conjunction)

Ich habe keine Heizung, seitdem ich in Spanien wohne

I haven't had heating since I've been living in Spain

sobald

It means "as soon as" (temporal conjunction)

Ich informiere dich, sobald ich kann

I'll inform you as soon as I can

sofern

It means "as long as" (temporal conjunction)

Wir versuchen zu helfen, sofern es möglich ist

We will try to help as long as it's possible

soviel

It means "**as much as**" or "**for all**"

Soviel ich weiß, ist sie in Berlin geboren

For all I know, she was born in Berlin

soweit

It means "as far as"

Soweit ich mich erinnern kann, war er Pilot

As far as I remember, he was a pilot

sowie

It means "as soon as"

Ich schicke dir das Dokument, sowie es fertig ist

I'll send you the document as soon as it's finished

während

It means "while" or "during" (temporal). While can act as a subordinate conjunction:

Während ich studierte, lernte ich auch Deutsch

While I was studying, I was also learning German
or as a preposition (während + Genitive):

Während meiner Jugendzeit war ich in Basel

During my youth I was in Basel

weil

It means "**because**" (causal conjunction)

Sie arbeitet heute nicht, weil sie krank ist

She doesn't work today because she's sick

Synonyms: denn

wenn

It means "if" but only in certain cases. For example: "If you want to go with us, you can." Expressing doubt would require "ob". For example: "I don't know if you'd like to come with us." It also means "whenever" (conditional conjunction)

Wenn du möchtest, kannst du Deutsch lernen

If you want, you can learn German (context of "if" or "in case")

Wenn ich singe, fühle ich mich viel besser

If I sing, I feel much better (context of "whenever I sing...")

Common mistakes: Confusing the use of "wenn" and "ob".

wie

It means "**how**" (modal conjunction):

Ich weiß nicht, wie ich es auf Deutsch sagen kann

I don't know how to say it in German

or for expressions of equality:

Peter ist so dünn wie Tomas

Peter is as thin as Tomas

wo

It means "where" (local conjunction)

Ich weiß nicht, wo er Deutsch gelernt hat

I don't know where he learned German

Compound Conjunctions

Compound conjunctions are formed by 2 words:

Compound conjunction	Meaning
<u>anstatt ... zu</u>	instead of

	[subordinate]
<u>entweder ... oder</u>	either... or [coordinate]
<u>weder noch</u>	neither... nor [coordinate]
<u>weder noch</u>	as well as [subordinate]
<u>sowohl ... als (auch)</u>	as well as [subordinate]
<u>sowohl ... wie (auch)</u>	as well as [subordinate]

anstatt...zu

It means "instead of"

Ich würde 2 Wochen am Strand liegen, anstatt zu arbeiten

I would be lying on the beach for 2 weeks instead of working

entweder...oder

It means "either... or"

Entweder bist du Teil der Lösung, oder du bist Teil des Problems

Either you're part of the solution or you're part of the problem

Die Hose ist entweder schwarz oder rot

The pants are either black or red

weder...noch

It means "neither... nor"

Weder du noch ich haben eine Lösung

Neither you nor I have a solution

sowohl ... als (auch)

It means "as well as"

Ich habe sowohl schon einen Mercedes als auch einen Audi gehabt

I have had a Mercedes as well as an Audi

sowohl ... wie (auch)

It means "as well as"

Ich habe sowohl ein Auto wie auch ein Motorrad

I have a car as well as a motorcycle

CONJ. TABLES

Tuesday, October 30, 2018 7:05 AM

Konjunktionen

Conjunctions vs Prepositions

A **conjunction** is a "little word" that connects two clauses: "You're so fine, **and** you're mine"; "Long stemmed roses are the way to your heart, **but** he needs to start with your head." In German, a conjunction either "coordinates" two "equally important" clauses, or it "subordinates" one clause to the other. Subordinating conjunctions make the verb go to the end in the clause they introduce, while coordinating conjunctions leave the verb position unchanged (==> the verb will usually, but not always, be in position 2 after a coordinating conjunction). Since conjunctions determine the relation between clauses (and, because, although, as if...), it's crucial for you to be familiar with their meanings.

A preposition is a "little word" that brings a noun or pronoun into the sentence: "Zephyr **in** the sky **atnight** I wonder, do my tears **of** mourning sink **beneath** the sun?" Prepositions don't affect word order in German, but they do determine the case of the noun or pronoun they bring into the sentence. Since prepositions determine what the nouns or pronouns they bring into the sentence are doing there (on, under, with, without, instead of...), it's again crucial for you to be familiar with their meanings. [Click here](#)for more information on prepositions.

A few words (e.g. **seit**, **während**) can be **both** conjunctions and prepositions, and you have to determine their function by looking to see if they are connecting two phrases (Ich esse SPAM, **seit** ich in Amerika bin: **conjunction**; Ich esse **seit** drei Stunden SPAM: **preposition**). English uses "after" and "before" as both conjunctions and prepositions, but German distinguishes the *conjunctions* **nachdem** and **bevor** from the *prepositions* **nach** and **vor**.

Even after reading this explanation, you're likely to sometimes confuse prepositions and conjunctions. ==> When your instructor uses either term and you're not sure what s/he means, **please** ask. Many of your classmates will be grateful to you!

<u>Summary Tables</u>	Please refer to the Word Order page for practice exercises and diagnostic exercises on this topic
Usage Notes and Examples: <u>Coordinating Conjunctions</u> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• <u>Und, denn, sondern, aber, oder</u>• <u>Other coordinating conjunctions: allein, doch, jedoch, beziehungsweise</u> <u>Subordinating Conjunctions</u>	 <u>Two-Part Coordinating Conjunctions</u>

Coordinating Conjunctions

These occupy position 0 and leave the verb position the same as in the preceding clause.

<u>und</u>	and
<u>denn</u>	because
<u>sondern</u>	but (rather)
<u>aber</u>	but
<u>oder</u>	or
<u>beziehungsweise</u>	or, or more precisely
<u>allein</u> [rare]	but (unfortunately)
<u>doch</u>	but, however

jedoch

but, however

Subordinating Conjunctions

These send the conjugated verb to the end of the clause.

<u>bevor</u>	before
<u>ehe</u>	before
<u>nachdem</u>	after
<u>während</u>	during, while, whereas
<u>seit, seitdem</u>	since (for time, not for "because")
<u>bis</u>	until, by
<u>als</u>	when (past events)
<u>wenn</u>	when (pres. & fut.), whenever, if
<u>wann</u>	when (questions only)
<u>obwohl</u>	although [can also use <u>obgleich</u> [less common] and <u>obschon</u> [least common]]
<u>als ob, als wenn, als</u>	as if
<u>solange</u>	as long as
<u>sooft</u>	as often as (whenever)
<u>sobald</u>	as soon as
<u>da</u>	because
<u>weil</u>	because
<u>indem</u>	by ...-ing
<u>wenn</u>	if, when
<u>ob</u>	whether, if [use only if you could say "whether" in English]
<u>falls</u>	in case, if
<u>um...zu</u>	in order to
<u>damit</u>	so that
<u>so dass</u>	so that
<u>dass</u>	that

Two-Part Coordinating Conjunctions

These occupy position 1 (except for the "oder" in "entweder...oder") and leave the verb position the same as in the preceding clause.

<u>entweder...oder</u>	either...or
<u>weder...noch</u>	neither...nor
<u>sowohl...als auch</u>	both...and
<u>einerseits...andererseits</u>	on one hand...on the other hand
<u>bald...bald</u>	sometimes...sometimes
<u>mal...mal</u>	sometimes...sometimes
<u>teils...teils</u>	partly...partly

Usage Notes and Examples

Coordinating Conjunctions

Und, denn, sondern, aber, oder

1. Silly note for disco fans: these can be sung to the tune of "Stayin' Alive." Amaze your friends at Retro

Nights...:

und	denn	son-	dern	aber-oder	aber-oder
ah	ha	ha	ha	stayin'alive	stayin'alive

2. After a coordinating conjunction, continue with the same word order as in the previous clause. The conjunction occupies "position zero." This *usually* means that the conjugated verb will be in position two (or first position, if the subject is omitted--1st & 3rd example):

Einstein war ein sauberer Mensch, aber [er] kämmte sich nie die Haare.	Einstein was a clean person, but he never combed his hair.
"X-Rays" heißen auf deutsch "Röntgenstrahlen", denn sie wurden 1895 von Wilhelm Röntgen entdeckt.	"X-rays" are called "Röntgen rays" in German because they were discovered by Wilhelm Röntgen in 1895.
Das Universum wird ewig expandieren, oder [es] wird eines Tages kollabieren.	The universe will expand eternally, or it will collapse one day.

If, however, the previous clause has **dependent** word order (conjugated verb at the end), then the sentence continues with dependent word order after the coordinating conjunction:

Es regnet, weil die Luft feucht <i>ist</i> und es kalt <i>ist</i> .	It's raining because the air is moist and (because) it's cold.
Der Autor glaubt, dass Evolution kein deterministischer Vorgang <i>ist</i> , sondern ein Zufall <i>war</i> .	The author believes that evolution is not a deterministic process, but rather, that it was a chance occurrence.

This applies also when coordinating and subordinating conjunctions appear side by side:

Es regnet, weil die Luft feucht <i>ist</i> und weil es kalt <i>ist</i> .	It's raining because the air is moist and because it's cold.
Wir sind jetzt müde, aber sobald wir in die Deutschklasse <i>kommen</i> , werden wir wach [=awake].	We're tired now, but as soon as we get into the German class we become awake.

Other notes and examples

1. **Aber** vs **sondern**:

- a. Use **sondern** if you could say "**but rather**" [in the sense of **instead**] in English.
- b. **Sondern** must be preceded by a negation; **aber** can be.
- c. **Nicht nur** is always followed by **sondern auch**.

Die Sonne ist nicht sehr groß, aber sie ist heiß.	The sun is not very big, but it is hot.
Die Sonne ist nicht sehr groß, sondern durchschnittlich.	The sun is not very big, but rather [instead], it is average.
Unsere Sonne ist nicht nur groß, sondern auch heiß.	The sun is not only big, but also hot.

2. **Denn** vs **weil**: both give a reason, and their meanings are as similar as those of "because" and "since" in English. The only differences are that **they require different word order** (since **weil** is a subordinating conjunction), and that **denn-clauses cannot start a sentence**. The following sentences are all equivalent, but the last one is illegal:

Die Dinosaurier sind ausgestorben, weil ein gewaltiger [=huge] Meteorit auf die Erde gefallen ist.	The dinosaurs died out because a huge meteorite hit the Earth.
Die Dinosaurier sind ausgestorben, denn ein gewaltiger	

[=huge] Meteorit ist auf die Erde gefallen.

Weil ein gewaltiger [=huge] Meteorit auf die Erde gefallen ist, sind die Dinosaurier ausgestorben.

Denn ein gewaltiger [=huge] Meteorit ist auf die Erde gefallen, sind die Dinosaurier ausgestorben.

Because a huge meteorite hit the Earth, the dinosaurs died out.

3. **Aber** can follow the verb and nouns/pronouns, or just the subject. This adds emphasis. See **jedoch** below for more examples.

Ein roter Riese endet oft als Neutronenstern, kann aber auch ein schwarzes Loch werden.	A red giant often ends as a neutron star, but can also become a black hole.
Der Präsident ist ein Alien, wir wollen ihn aber wieder wählen.	The president is an alien, but (still) we will vote for him again
Der Präsident ist ein Alien, wir wollen aber ihn wieder wählen.	The president is an alien, but (still) we will vote for him again]
Der Präsident ist ein Alien, wir aberwollen wieder für ihn wählen.	The president is an alien; we, however , will vote for him again

[Zurück nach oben](#)

Other coordinating conjunctions: allein, doch, jedoch, beziehungsweise

allein: Can be used instead of **aber** to express unwelcome or unexpected problems or restrictions. Sounds formal and a little archaic.

Es gibt viele kosmologische Theorien, **allein** wir wissen über 90% der Materie des Universums gar nichts.

There are many cosmological theories, **but (unfortunately)** we know nothing at all about 90% of the material of the universe.

doch, jedoch: Slightly more formal and slightly more emphatic than aber. They may occupy position 0, like und, denn, etc., or they may occupy first position, as in the second example below.

Wir hatten Hunger, **jedoch/doch** ich aß das Eis nicht.

We were hungry, but I did not eat the ice cream.

Wir hatten Hunger, **jedoch/dochaß** ich das Eis nicht.

We were hungry, but I did not eat the ice cream.

Jedoch is a little stronger than **doch**, and can come after the subject and/or the verb and nouns/pronouns, like **aber**, for added emphasis. Notice how the emphasis changes as **jedoch** moves around in the following sentences:

Wir hatten Hunger, ich aß das Eis jedoch nicht.	We were hungry, but I did not eat the ice cream.
Wir hatten Hunger, ich aß es jedoch nicht.	We were hungry, but I did not eat it.
Wir hatten Hunger, ich aß jedoch das Eis nicht.	We were hungry, but I did not eat <i>the ice cream</i> .
Wir hatten Hunger, ich aß jedoch es nicht.	We were hungry, but I did not eat <i>it</i> .
Wir hatten Hunger, ich jedoch aß das Eis nicht.	We were hungry, but I did not eat the ice cream.
Wir hatten Hunger, ich jedoch aß es nicht.	We were hungry, but I did not eat it.

beziehungsweise (abbrev.: bzw.): This is a relatively formal synonym for **oder**, used with **mutually exclusive alternatives**. It can also mean "**or more precisely**."

Ein Hamburger kostet € 2.40, **bzw.** € 2.80 mit Käse.

A Hamburger costs € 2.40, or €2.80 with cheese.

Die beiden gingen ins Gefängnis [=prison], **beziehungsweise** zum elektrischen Stuhl.

The two of them went to prison and the electric chair respectively.

Homer Simpson hat den Fisch gegessen, **beziehungsweise** gefressen.

Die Erde kreist um die Sonne, **bzw.** Sonne und Erde kreisen umeinander.

[Zurück nach oben](#)

Homer Simpson ate the fish, or more precisely he devoured it.

The Earth revolves around the Sun, or more precisely the Sun and the Earth revolve around each other.

Two-Part Coordinating Conjunctions

entweder...oder: either...or

Entweder du gibst mir € 100, **oder** ich gehe zur Polizei.

Entweder gibst du mir € 100, **oder** ich gehe zur Polizei.

Du gibst mir **entweder** € 100, **oder** ich gehe zur Polizei.

Du kannst **entweder** das rote **oder** das grüne Hemd tragen.

Either you give me € 100 **or** I'm going to the police.

You can wear **either** the red **or** the green shirt.

weder...noch: neither...nor

Du kannst **weder** das rote **noch** das grüne Hemd tragen.

Der Stern von Bethlehem war **weder** eine Supernova, **noch** (war er) ein Komet. [usual word order]

Weder war der Stern von Bethlehem eine Supernova, **noch** (war er) ein Komet. [uncommon word order]

You can wear **neither** the red shirt **nor** the green shirt.

The start of Bethlehem was **neither** a supernova **nor** a comet.

sowohl...als auch: both...and

Du kannst **sowohl** das rote **als auch** das grüne Hemd tragen.

Wir haben **sowohl** die Hausaufgabe gemacht, **als auch** alle Vokabeln gelernt.

You can wear **both** the red shirt **and** the green shirt.

We did the homework **and** we learned the vocabulary.

einerseits...andererseits: on the one hand...on the other hand

Einerseits mache ich Diät, **andererseits** will ich gern ein Eis essen.

Ich mache **einerseits** Diät, **andererseits** will ich gern ein Eis essen.

On the one hand I'm on a diet, **on the other hand** I'd like to eat some ice cream.

bald...bald/mal...mal: sometimes...sometimes

Bald regnet es, **bald** scheint die Sonne.

Mal ist der Pandabär aggressiv, **mal** ist er unglaublich süß.

Sometimes it rains, sometimes the sun shines.

Sometimes the panda bear is aggressive, **sometimes** it's unbelievably sweet.

teils...teils: partly...partly

Wasser besteht **teils** aus Sauerstoff, **teils** aus Wasserstoff.

Die Studenten gehen **teils** zur Bibliothek, **teils** bleiben sie zu Hause.

Water consists **partly** of Oxygen, **partly** of Hydrogen.

Some of the students go to the library, **some** stay at home.

Teils gehen die Studenten zur Bibliothek, **teils** bleiben sie zu Hause.

[Zurück nach oben](#)

Subordinating Conjunctions ==> Verb in final position

als/wenn/wann: when. To refer to a completed event in the past, use **als**, even if that event went on for a long time (**Als** ich jung war,...; **Als** ich fünf war,...). Use **wenn** with the past tense only if you are referring to a **repeated event**.

In *present* and *future* tense, use **wenn** for **when**.

Use **wann** only for *questions* and *indirect questions* (i.e. a statement without a question mark that directly or indirectly implies uncertainty about when the event will take place).

Als ich jung war, mochte ich Aal.	When I was young, I liked [eating] eel.
Als ich 5 war, aß ich oft Aal.	When I was 5, I often ate eel.
Als ich nach Ulm ging, aß ich Aal.	When I went to Ulm, I ate eel. [this happened once]
Wenn ich nach Ulm ging, aß ich Aal.	When(ever) I went to Ulm, I ate eel. [this happened repeatedly]
Wenn ich nach Ulm gehe, esse ich Aal.	When I go to Ulm, I'll eat eel [This can also mean: When(ever) I go to Ulm, I eat eel.]
Wann gehst du nach Ulm?	When are you going to Ulm?
Ich weiß nicht, wann ich nach Ulm gehe.	I don't know when I'm going to Ulm [indirect question: the statement directly implies uncertainty about when I'm going].
Es ist egal, wann ich nach Ulm gehe.	It doesn't matter when I'm going to Ulm [indirect question: the statement indirectly implies uncertainty about when I'm going].

Note that, although **wenn** can sometimes be translated as **whenever**, as in the fourth and fifth examples above, the best translation for **whenever** is **immer wenn**.

ob/wenn: Both translate *if*, but only one is right in any given sentence. If you **can** say *whether* in English, you **must** use **ob** in German. If you **cannot**, you **must** use **wenn**.

Ich weiß nicht, ob das stimmt.	I don't know whether (if) that is right.
Wenn es stimmt, bin ich froh.	If (whether) it is right, I'm happy.

falls: in case, if. Falls can sometimes be used instead of **wenn** to express **possibility**. It is a little more tentative than **wenn**.

Falls ihr es baut, werden sie kommen.	If you build it, they will come. [more tentative]
Wenn ihr es baut, werden sie kommen.	If you build it, they will come. [less tentative]
Nimm einen Schirm mit, falls es regnet.	Take an umbrella along in case it rains.
Nimm einen Schirm mit, wenn es regnet.	Take an umbrella along if it rains.

[Zurück nach oben](#)

bevor/ehe: before. Ehe is slightly more formal. Reminder: use **bevor** with *actions*, but **vor** with *nouns* (Wir sehen uns **bevor** der Film beginnt; Wir sehen uns **vor** dem Film).

nachdem: after. Reminder: use **nachdem** with *actions*, but **nach** with *nouns* (Wir sehen uns **nachdem** der Film beginnt; Wir sehen uns **nach** dem Film).

seitdem, seit: since. Reminders:

1. Use **seitdem** or **seit** with **actions**, but *only seit* with **nouns** (Wir schlafen **seit/seitdem die Klasse begann**; Wir schlafen **seit der Klasse**).

2. **Seitdem** and **seit** mean "**since**" in the temporal sense only. They **cannot** be used in the sense of "**because**." For this, you would have to use **weil**, **da**, or **denn**.

damit/so dass/um...zu: so that. See "[Superwörter I](#)" for more explanations!
da/weil: because. **Da** is slightly more formal.

als ob/als wenn/als: as if. **Als ob** is the most common of the three. Since they describe conjectures or contrary to fact conditions, these are *usually* used with **Subjunctive II**. **Note:** when **als** is used in this sense, the conjugated verb is in **position 2, not** in final position.

Dieser Schmetterling sieht aus, **als ob/als wenn** er ein Blatt wäre.

This butterfly looks as if it were a leaf.

Dieser Schmetterling sieht aus, **alswäre** er ein Blatt.

[Zurück nach oben](#)

bis: until; by. **Bis** usually means **until**, but can also mean **by the time** or **by**.

Wir kitzelten Rumpelstilzchen, **bissie** lächelte. We tickled Rumpelstizchen **until** she smiled.

Bis sie lächelte, waren viele Jahre vergangen. **By the time** she smiled, many years had passed.

dass: that. Like its English equivalent "that," **daß** can often be omitted, but in that case the verb goes to **position 2**.

Einstein glaubte, **daß** Gott nicht würfelt. Einstein believed **that** God does not play dice.

Einstein glaubte, Gott **würfelt** nicht. Einstein believed [**that**] God does not play dice.

indem: by ...-ing. Explains how something is achieved.

Manchmal begehen Lemminge Massenselbstmord, **indem** sie ins Meer springen.

Sometimes lemmings commit mass suicide **by jumping** into the sea.

Indem er dem Lehrer eine Banane gab, sicherte sich der Student eine gute Note.

By giving the teacher a banana, the student secured a good grade.

obwohl/obgleich/obschon: although. **Obwohl** is the most common of the three, **obschon** is least common.

Obgleich/obschon/obwohl es ein nützliches Wort ist, benutzen die Studenten "**obwohl**" selten.

Although it is a useful word, the students rarely use "**obwohl**."

[Zurück nach oben](#)

sobald/solange/sooft: as soon as/as long as/as often as (whenever). These indicate the conditions under which something will happen.

Sobald die Kinder Barney sehen, hört ihr Gehirn auf zu funktionieren.

As soon as the children see Barney, their brain stops functioning.

Solange das Innere der Erde heiß ist, werden die Kontinente sich bewegen.

As long as the interior of the earth is hot, the continents will move.

Der Schneider wird Daumen abschneiden, **sooft** ein Kind seinen Daumen lutscht.

The tailor will cut off thumbs **as often as/whenever** a child sucks its thumb.

Während: during, while. Like **while** in English, **während** can be used temporally to indicate that two actions are going on simultaneously, or "conceptually" to contrast two ideas or events. See also [Superwörter II](#) for some more details about **während**.

Nero spielte seine Flöte **während** Rom brannte.

Nero played his flute **while** Rome burned.

Die meisten Autos haben einen Viertakt-Motor, **während** der Trabant einen Zweitakt-Motor hat, wie ein Motorrad oder eine Kettensäge.

Most cars have a four-stroke engine, **while/whereas** the Trabant has a two-stroke engine, like a motorcycle or a chainsaw.

From <<http://www.lsa.umich.edu/german/hmr/Grammatik/Konjunktionen/Konjunktionen.html#wann>>

SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

Thursday, October 25, 2018 4:54 PM

The subordinate clause in German (Nebensatz)

The **subordinate clauses** are complicated and are often not fully understandable. In this article we have tried our best to explain them in the clearest way possible. Let's get going:

Introduction

A complex sentence (Satzgefüge) is formed by a main clause (Hauptsatz) and a subordinate clause (Nebensatz).

COMPLEX SENTENCE = MAIN CLAUSE + SUBORDINATE CLAUSE

Types of subordinate clause constructions:

- Subordinate clauses with a conjunction
 - [Common subordinate clauses](#)
 - [Infinitive subordinate clause](#)
- Subordinate clauses without a conjunction
 - [Relative Clauses](#)
 - [Subordinate clauses from the "Konjunktiv I" without dass](#)

Common Subordinate Clauses

Common subordinate clauses are the most used subordinate clauses and have the following characteristics:

- They have a common subordinate conjunction
- The conjugated verb is placed at the end of a the clause

It's easier to see this with an example:

Ich wusste nicht, dass du so klug bist

I didn't know that you were so smart

One type of subordinate clause is the [conditional clause](#).

Common subordinate conjunctions

subordinate conjunctions		
• als	• obwohl	• während
• bevor	• seit	• weil
• bis	• sobald	• wenn
• dass	• sofern	• wie

- | | | |
|----------------|-----------------|-------------|
| • <u>damit</u> | • <u>soweit</u> | • <u>wo</u> |
| • <u>ob</u> | • <u>sowie</u> | |

Infinitive Subordinate Clauses

Infinitive subordinate clauses are characterized by not having a subject. The subject is understood by the information in the main clause. The subject that is omitted from the subordinate clause can be either the main clause's subject or its direct/indirect object or another that is understood to be there.

Er hat den Befehl gegeben, ihn nicht zu stören

He gave the order to not disturb him

Infinitive Subordinate Conjunctions

Infinitive Subordinate Conjunctions		
• anstatt zu	• statt zu	• <u>um zu</u>
• außer zu	• <u>ohne zu</u>	• <u>zu</u>

Relative clauses

An example of this type of clause is:

Hast Du die Lampe, die du gestern gesehen hast, gekauft?

Did you buy the lamp that you saw yesterday?

This type of clause is explained in: [Relative clauses](#)

Subordinate Clauses of the "Konjunktiv I" without "dass"

With the clauses of the [Konjunktiv I](#) it is not necessary to use a conjunction. You simply say:

Martin sagt, er sei Schauspieler

Martin says he's an actor

Even though it is also ok to use "dass":

Martin sagt, dass er Schauspieler sei

The Comma in Subordinate Clauses

In German, you have to put in a comma to separate the main clause (Hauptsatz) from the subordinate clause (Nebensatz)

Ich mache, was ich will

I do what I want

Inverting the Subordinate Clauses

As we stated previously, the typical structure of a subordinate clause is:

COMPLEX SENTENCE= MAIN CLAUSE + SUBORDINATE

CLAUSE

ich weiß nicht, ob er mich liebt

I don't know if he loves me

Sometimes, more importance is given to the subordinate clause and therefore it comes first:

COMPLEX SENTENCE = SUBORDINATE CLAUSE + MAIN CLAUSE

Ob er mich liebt, weiß ich nicht

Whether/if he loves me, I don't know

It should be emphasized that the subordinate clause now occupies the first position in the sentence, which makes the subject move to the 3rd position so that the verb stays in the second position.

From <[https://www.germanveryeeasy.com/subordinate-clause](https://www.germanveryeasy.com/subordinate-clause)>

SUBORDINATE CONJUNCTIONS

Monday, October 22, 2018 5:05 PM

STATEMENT:

"Solange er spielt, ist er gesund."

"As long as he is playing, he is healthy."

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/8854179>>

QUESTION:

Solange er spielt, er ist gesund. Vs. Solange er spielt, ist er gesund. ??

ANSWER:

When the subordinate clause (in this case, the 'solange...' one) comes first, such whole clause occupies the 'first position'. Since the verb always comes in second position in statements, such clause has to be followed immediately by a verb. Therefore, only your second option is correct.

German is a verb second language or V2, meaning the verb always have to come in the second place in the sentence.

In parsing or syntactic analysis, a subordinate clause is a part of a sentence that depends on another part. It cannot exist by itself as it complements the main clause. They need a connector or conjunctions to be connected to the main clause, which in this case is *solange*.

So, as parsing goes, that whole clause counts as the first element of the sentence, meaning the next element must be a verb.

- *Solange er spielt, ist er gesund.*

Solange er spielt — subordinate clause, first element

Ist er gesund — main clause, the verb is the second element in the sentence.

Maybe it's better to understand like this:

You have two clauses that are trying to form a sentence.

- Er spielt
- Er ist gesund

Solange is the connector of these two clauses counting as an external element, so the two

clauses become one sentence like this:

- **{[(Solange) er spielt] ist er gesund}**

The [subordinate clause] is the first element of the {sentence}. The verb **ist** comes second.

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/8854179>>

STATEMENT:

"Da er uns mag, mögen wir ihn."

"Because he likes us, we like him".

QUESTION:

Shouldn't it be "Da er uns mag, wir mögen ihn"? Since the first bit is a subordinate sentence the verb should go at the end, but the second sentence stands on its own and therefore the subject should go first and the verb in the second position.

I've thought the verb must be the second part of the sentence, how is it possible to say "er uns mag"?

ANSWER:

No. Don't forget the verb-second rule.

The Subordinating clause is treated as the first "word", so the verb must be next after the comma. The verb maintains second place with few exceptions.

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/265753>>

"When [the dependent clause precedes the main clause], it normally occupies the first position, necessitating an inverted order in the independent clause (i.e. with the subject is located in the third position)."

<http://www.dartmouth.edu/~german/Grammatik/WordOrder/WordOrder.html>

1 [Da er uns mag,] 2 [mögen] 3 [wir] 4 [ihn.]

"da" is a subordinating conjunction.

"When a subordinating conjunction occupies the first position, a dependent clause results. Keep in mind that, as the name implies, such a clause is not a whole sentence; an independent, or main clause must also be present. The primary feature of a dependent clause is that the finite verb is no longer in the second position, but moves to the end, following even the verb complement (if there is one). If that complement is a separable prefix, the two elements are written as one word. I.e. "er schläft ein" [he falls asleep] becomes "weil er einschläft" [because he falls asleep]."

<http://www.dartmouth.edu/~german/Grammatik/WordOrder/WordOrder.html>

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/709699>>

SENTENCES

Monday, October 29, 2018 5:10 AM

While there are cases in which German and English word order are identical, German word order (die Wortstellung) is generally more variable and flexible than English. A "normal" word order places the subject first, the verb second, and any other elements third, for example: "Ich sehe dich." ("I see you.") or "Er arbeitet zu Hause." ("He works at home.").

Sentence Structure

- Simple, declarative sentences are identical in German and English: Subject, verb, other.
- The [verb](#) is always the second element in a German sentence.
- With compound verbs, the second part of the verb goes last, but the conjugated part is still second.
- German sentences are usually "[time](#), manner, place.
- After a subordinate clause / conjunction, the verb goes last.

Throughout this article, note that verb refers to the [conjugated](#) or finite verb, i.e., the verb that has an ending that agrees with the subject (er geht, wir geh en, du gehst, etc.). Also, "in second position" or "second place," means the second element, not necessarily the second word. For example, in the following sentence, the subject (Der alte Mann) consists of three words and the verb (kommt) comes second, but it is the fourth word:

"Der alte Mann kommt heute nach Hause."

Compound Verbs

With compound verbs, the second part of the verb phrase ([past participle](#), separable prefix, infinitive) goes last, but the conjugated element is still second:

- "Der alte Mann kommt heute an."
- "Der alte Mann ist gestern angekommen."
- "Der alte Mann will heute nach Hause kommen."

However, German often prefers to begin a sentence with something other than the subject, usually for emphasis or for stylistic reasons. Only one element can precede the verb, but it may consist of more than one word (e.g., "vor zwei Tagen" below).

In such cases, the verb remains second and the subject must immediately follow the verb:

- "Heute kommt der alte Mann nach Hause."
- "Vor zwei Tagen habe ich mit ihm gesprochen."

The Verb Is Always the Second Element

No matter which element begins a German declarative sentence (a statement), the verb is always the second element. If you remember nothing else about German word order, remember this: the subject will either come first or immediately after the verb if the subject is not the first element. This is a simple, hard and fast rule. In a statement (not a question) the verb always comes second.

This rule applies to sentences and phrases that are independent clauses. The only verb-second exception is for dependent or subordinate clauses. In subordinate clauses, the verb always comes last. (Although in today's spoken German, this rule is often ignored.)

One other exception to this rule: interjections, exclamations, names, certain adverbialphrases are usually set off by a comma. Here are some examples:

- "Nein, der alte Mann kommt nicht nach Hause."
- "Maria, ich kann heute nicht kommen."
- "Wie gesagt, das kann ich nicht machen."

In the sentences above, the initial word or phrase (set off by a comma) comes first but does not alter the verb-second rule.

Time, Manner, and Place

Another area where German syntax may vary from that of English is the position of expressions of time (wann?), manner (wie?) and place (wo?). In English, we would say, "Erik is coming home on the train today." English word order in such cases is place, manner, time... the exact opposite of German. In English it would sound odd to say, "Erik is coming today on the train home," but that is precisely how German wants it said: time, manner, place. "Erik kommt heute mit der Bahn nach Hause."

The only exception would be if you want to start the sentence with one of these elements for emphasis. Zum Beispiel: "Heute kommt Erik mit der Bahn nach Hause." (Emphasis on "today.") But even in this case, the elements are still in the prescribed order: time ("heute"), manner ("mit der Bahn"), place ("nach Hause").

If we start with a different element, the elements that follow remain in their usual order, as in: "Mit der Bahn kommt Erik heute nach Hause." (Emphasis on "by train" - not by car or plane.)

German Subordinate (or Dependent) Clauses

Subordinate clauses, those parts of a sentence that cannot stand alone and are dependent on another part of the sentence, introduce more complicated word order rules. A subordinate clause is introduced by a subordinating conjunction (*dass, ob, weil, wenn*) or in the case of relative clauses, a relative pronoun (*den, der, die, welche*). The conjugated verb is placed at the end of a subordinate clause ("post position").

Here are some examples of subordinate clauses in German and English. Notice that each German subordinate clause (in bold type) is set off by a comma. Also, notice that the German word order is different from that of the English and that a subordinate clause may

come first or last in a sentence.

- „Ich weiß nicht, wann er heute ankommt.“ | “I don't know when he arrives today.”
- „Als sie hinausging, bemerkte sie sofort die glühende Hitze.“ | “When she went out, she immediately noticed the intense heat.”
- „Es gibt eine Umleitung, weil die Straße repariert wird.“ | “There's a detour because the road is being repaired.”
- „Das ist die Dame, die wir gestern sahen.“ | “That's the lady (that/whom) we saw yesterday.”

Some German-speakers these days ignore the verb-last rule, particularly with *weil* (because) and *dass* (that) clauses. You may hear something like "...weil ich bin müde" (because I'm tired), but it's not [grammatically correct German](#).

One theory blames this trend on English-language influences!

Conjunction First, Verb Last

As you can see above, a German subordinate clause always starts with a subordinating conjunction and ends with the conjugated verb. It is always set off from the main clause by a comma, whether it comes before or after the main clause. The other sentence elements, such as *time*, *manner*, *place*, fall into the normal order. The one thing you must remember is that when a sentence starts with a subordinate clause, as in the second example above, the very first word after the comma (before the main clause) must be the verb. In the example above, the verb *bemerkte* was that first word (note the differences between the English and German word order in that same example).

Another type of subordinate clause is the relative clause, which is introduced by a relative pronoun (as in the previous English sentence). Both relative clauses and subordinate clauses with a conjunction have the same word order. The last example in the sentence pairs above is actually a relative clause. A relative clause explains or further identifies a person or thing in the main clause.

Subordinating Conjunctions

One important aspect of learning to deal with subordinate clauses is to be familiar with the subordinating conjunctions that introduce them.

All of the subordinating conjunctions listed in this chart require the conjugated verb to go at the end of the clause they introduce. Another technique for learning them is to learn the ones that are NOT subordinating, since there are fewer of those.

The coordinating conjunctions (with normal word order)

are: aber, denn, entweder/oder (either/or), weder/noch (neither/nor), and und.

Some of the subordinating conjunctions can be confused with their second identity as prepositions (*bis*, *seit*, *während*), but this is usually not a big problem. The word *als* is also used in comparisons (*größer als*, bigger than), in which case it is not a subordinating conjunction. As always, you have to look at the context in which a word appears in a sentence.

German Subordinating Conjunctions	
DEUTSCH	ENGLISH
als	as, when
bevor	before
bis	until
da	as, since (because)
damit	so that, in order that
dass	that
ehe	before (re old Engl. "ere")
falls	in case
indem	while
nachdem	after
ob	whether, if
obgleich	although
obschon	although
obwohl	although
seit/seitdem	since (time)
sobald	as soon as
sodass / so dass	so that
solang(e)	as/so long as
trotzdem	despite the fact that
während	while, whereas
weil	because
wenn	if, whenever

Note: All of the interrogative words (*wann, wer, wie, wo*) can also be used as subordinating conjunctions.

From <<https://www.thoughtco.com/german-sentences-in-the-right-order-4068769>>

SONDERN VS ABER I

Tuesday, October 23, 2018 7:02 AM

- *Aber* has the same meaning as *however* and the contradicted clause can either be positive or negative.
- *Sondern* is used only when the contradicted clause is negative, in other words contains *nicht* or *kein*, and it can be translated as *but rather* or *instead – but not instead of*.

While **aber** is pretty close to the English **but**, the word **sondern** has a special meaning and *cannot* be replaced by **aber** (and vice versa).

You are supposed to use **sondern** after a negated phrase to express, that you are now talking about something true.

Ich mag keine Süßigkeiten, sondern Salziges.

In English you would use "rather than" in an inverse order.

I prefer salty stuff rather than candies.

Some other possibilities to express this are:

Ich mag keine Süßigkeiten, aber dafür / vielmehr / aber stattdessen Salziges.

Worth noting is, that all the proposals above are somewhat special and are not able to replace **sondern** in an elegant and universal way.

"Sondern" is only used if the two ideas come from the same category. With category I mean eg. a profession (doctor/manager) or a game (tennis/badminton) or a temperature (cold/warm)...

Example:

Es ist nicht kalt, sondern sehr warm. (It's not cold but very warm.) Es ist nicht kalt, aber ich ziehe mir eine dicke Jacke an. (It's not cold but I'll wear a big coat.)

In the first example "cold" and "warm" are both adjectives which describe temperature.

So, they come from one category. In the second example the two ideas of the two sentences are in contrast, too but one sentence describes a temperature and the other what somebody is going to wear. At last hint which might help you is, that there must be a negation form (*nicht* or *kein*) in the first sentence to use "sondern." If there is no "nicht" or "kein" in the first sentence you have to use "aber".

From <<https://german.stackexchange.com/questions/18517/is-there-any-difference-between-aber-und-sondern-as-konnektoren>>

SONDERN VS ABER II

Tuesday, October 23, 2018 7:05 AM

Conjunctions are words that link two sentences. In German, they belong to the group of non-declinable words, which means that they never change, no matter what case you think you should use or what gender a following noun has.

However, while in English you might only have one option, in German you will often find several possibilities to choose from. Such is the case with *aber* and *sondern* which your dictionary will most certainly translate both with "but".

Take a look at the following sentences:

1. *The child didn't want to go home, **but** to the park.*
*Das Kind will **nicht** nach Hause gehen, **sondern** zum Park.*
2. *I don't understand what you say, **but** you will certainly be right.*
*Ich verstehe **nicht**, was Sie sagen, **aber** Sie werden schon Recht haben.*
3. *She is exhausted, **but** doesn't want to go to sleep.*
*Sie ist erschöpft, **aber** will nicht schlafen gehen.*

As you can see, both *aber* and *sondern* mean *but* in English. How do you know which "but" conjunction to use? It is actually quite simple:

Aber, which means *but, however* is used after either a positive (1) or negative clause (2).

On the other hand, *sondern* is **only used** after a negative clause when expressing a contradiction. In other words, the first clause of the sentence must contain either *nicht* or *kein* (3), and the second part of the sentence **must contradict** the first part of the sentence. *Sondern* can be best translated as *but rather*.

How Caruso's Little Brother Helps You to Create Better Sentences

One last thing: "*aber*" as well as "*sondern*" are so called "ADUSO"-words. ADUSO is an acronym for:

- A=aber (but)
- D=denn (because)
- U=und (and)
- S=sondern (contradicting but)
- O=oder (or)

Those conjunctions all take position zero in a sentence. To remember that you might want to think of ADUSO as the little brother of [Enrico Caruso, the great opera singer](#).

But he never grew out of his famous brother's shadow and remained quite a **loser**. Imagine the "o" in "loser" as a zero to remember "position zero". If you have questions about the German sentence order, [you might want to read this article](#)

[here](#).

A Little Quiz

Let's test your knowledge. Which German version of "but" would you use in the following sentences?

1. Ich komme nicht aus England, _____ aus Schottland.
I don't come from England but from Scotland.
2. Ich bin hungrig, _____ ich habe keine Zeit etwas zu essen.
I am hungry, but I don't have time to eat something.
3. Sie spricht drei Sprachen: Englisch, Russisch und Arabisch _____ leider kein Deutsch.
She speaks three languages: English, Russian and Arabic but unfortunately no German.
4. Wir hätten gerne drei Cheeseburger, _____ ohne Zwiebeln.
We would like (to have) three cheeseburgers, but without onions.
5. Er hat keinen Kartoffelsalat mitgebracht, _____ Nudelsalat.
He didn't bring potato salad, but noodle salad.
6. Er hat gesagt, er bringt Kartoffelsalat mit, _____ er hat Nudelsalat mitgebracht.
He said, he'd bring potato salad, but he brought noodle salad.

Answers to the Quiz

1. Ich komme nicht aus England, **sondern** aus Schottland.
I don't come from England, but from Scotland.
2. Ich bin hungrig, **aber** ich habe keine Zeit etwas zu essen.
I am hungry, but I don't have time to eat something.
3. Sie spricht drei Sprachen: Englisch, Russisch und Arabisch **aber** leider kein Deutsch.
She speaks three languages: English, Russian and Arabic but unfortunately no German.
4. Wir hätten gerne drei Cheeseburger, **aber** ohne Zwiebeln.
We would like (to have) three cheeseburgers, but without onions.
5. Er hat keinen Kartoffelsalat mitgebracht, **sondern** Nudelsalat.
He didn't bring potato salad, but noodle salad.
6. Er hat gesagt, er bringt Kartoffelsalat mit, **aber** er hat Nudelsalat mitgebracht.
He said, he'd bring potato salad, but he brought noodle salad.

From <<https://www.thoughtco.com/conjunctions-in-german-grammar-1444450>>

ENTWEDER ... ODER

Wednesday, October 24, 2018 6:14 AM

Hello everyone,



Welcome to another rendition of the German Word of the Day TAG – TEAM – SPECIAL ! Today we will look at one of those infamous duos will tackle that one certain phrasing you need for you. This time we are going to have a look at the meaning and the mechanics of:

entweder ... oder...

These 2 guys will be the ones to call whenever you have to phrase a decision between 2 options. The translation is pretty straight forward for once. **Entweder** means **either** and **oder** means **or**. The basic structure is also quite similar in German and English. **Entweder... oder** ...are a little more flexible as to their positioning. But let's look a few regular examples first.

- We don't really have Lager here so **either** Pils **or** dark beer.
- Wir haben hier kein Lager, also **entweder** Pils **oder** Schwarzbier.
- I don't know what to do tonight... I could **either** go to a concert **or** to my colleagues wedding party.
- Ich weiß nicht, was ich heute abend machen soll... Ich könnte **entweder** zu einem Konzert **oder** zur Hochzeitsfeier von einem Arbeitskollegen gehen.

Now so far our options were different things or places. But sometimes, you have the choice between 2 actions... and maybe the actions even have the same objects.

- I can **either** read **or** sell the book.
- Ich kann das Buch **entweder** lesen **oder** verkaufen.

The modal verb **kann** is taking the second position in the German sentence. So naturally all the remainder of the verbal phrase will pile up at the end of the sentence. That's why the choices, the verbs **lesen** and **verkaufen**, come after book in German. Other than that there are no big differences, and most of the either-or configurations you can muster up in English will be easily transferable to German. One thing is a little tricky though...

Depending on the context the **entweder** either counts as position 0 or 1, so sometimes the verb has to come after it. It is position 0 if the phrase tells someone to do something and tells what is going to happen if he doesn't do it.

- **Either** you do your homework **or** I post baby pictures on your Facebook page.
- **Entweder** du machst deine Hausaufgaben, **oder** ich stelle Babyfotos auf deine Facebookseite. It will count as position 1 if the phrase is expressing that someone is pondering two possibilities.
- "What are you doing after work?" "Well, **either** I go home **or** I go have beer."
- "Was machst du nach der Arbeit?" "Hmm, **entweder** gehe ich heim **oder** ich trinke ein Bier."

We are almost done but first we need to make sure to avoid one trapdoor. Or translates to **oder** in

pretty much any case that I can think of. Either however only translates to **entweder** when used in a either ... or ... context. Either in sense of “I do not smoke either” is translated by ‘as well not’.

- “Ich rauche nicht.”
“Ich rauche **auch nicht**.”
- “I don’t smoke.”
“I don’t either.”

The either in sense of ‘both’ or ‘either one’ is translated differently based on context but it usually works with word for both which is **beide**. More detailed information can be found in the online dictionary of Pons.

From <<https://yourdailygerman.com/german-word-of-the-day-tag-team-special-entweder-oder/>>

WEDER ... NOCH

Wednesday, October 24, 2018 6:18 AM

This time we will have a look at the meaning and grammar of one hell of a team. Say hello toooooooooo:

weder... noch...

Suppose you have a bad day and you are grumpy as hell. People might offer you things to make you feel better and yet this is just making you even grumpier. If you know what I mean, then you will find lots of joy with **weder... noch...** as they will make your rejections sound much more definite.

- “Hey, wir gehen ins Kino, willst du mitkommen.”
- “Neeeeeee, keine Lust.”
- “Willst du lieber was trinken?”
- “Neee... **WEDER** Kino NOCH Bar!”
- “Ok, ok... schon gut.”

Weder... noch.... is the construction to reject two or more things and it is the German version of **neither... nor...** .

- I want **neither** coffee **nor** tea.
- Ich will **weder** Kaffee **noch** Tee.
- **Neither** have I any idea who drank your beer, **nor** is there anything in my room that could help you find this person.
- **Weder** habe ich eine Idee, wer dein Bier getrunken hat, **noch** ist da irgendwas in meinem Zimmer, das dir helfen könnte, die Person zu finden.
- There is **neither** rhyme **nor** reason in that.
- Das hat **weder** Hand **noch** Fuß. (idiomatic translation!)

As you can see the mechanics of **weder .. noch...** and **neither.. nor...** are pretty much the same. This is similar to the pair **entweder... oder...** but for those two we already found out that there is big differences between German and English if you take the words separately. So let's take a quick look at the words one by one.

Noch is mostly combined with another word to form a variation of expressions. I don't want to get into this right now because it is too much.

Weder however makes up for **noch**'s diversity as it means... nothing. “But doesn't it mean **neither**?”. No not really. It just means **neither** when it is teamed up with **noch** and this is the only time you will ever see or hear it anywhere.

The English **neither** however is used without **nor** in a number of constructions that can be boiled down to 2 concepts. The first one is summarized by ‘me **neither**’ so it is a negative ‘**too**’. In German this works using **auch nicht**.

- “I don’t like Rosé.” “Me **neither**.”
- “Ich mag keinen Rosé.” “Ich **auch nicht**.”
- Maria didn’t do her homework. **Neither** did Tom.
- Maria hat ihre Hausaufgaben nicht gemacht. Tom **auch nicht**.

To make it more clear, here the more literal translations:

- “Ich mag auch keinen Rosé”
- “I do not like Rosé too.”
- Tom hat seine Hausaufgaben auch nicht gemacht.
- Tom has not done his homeworks too.

The second **neither**, the one of ‘**neither** of us’, is going to be translated into some construction with **keine/keiner/keinem/keinen** ect. The exact translation depends on case, gender and of course situation so the 2 examples are just some possibilities:

- I tried both types of beer in that bar and **neither one** was tasty.
- Ich habe beide Biersorten in der Bar probiert, und **keine** war lecker.
- Come on! **Neither** of us likes to do the dishes but one has to.
- Komm schon! **Keiner** von uns wäscht gerne ab. Aber einer muss.

So just to recap **weder... noch...** means **neither ... nor...**. Now we need to look at the grammar quickly. In German you usually put the words **weder** and **noch** right in front the two alternatives you want to reject. So it is:

- Ich mag **weder** Schokolade **noch** Eis.
- I like **neither** chocolate **nor** ice cream.
- Ich gehe **weder** zur Arbeit **noch** zur Uni.
- I **neither** go to work **nor** to university.
- **Weder** will ich Fussball gucken, **noch** habe ich Appetit auf Bier.
- **Neither** do I want to watch Soccer **nor** do I feel like drinking beer.

In the last example the two alternatives are the main actions of the phrases – to want and to have.

Weder and **noch** are in front of the verbs and the verb is just where it needs to be... in its precious second slot. So in that regard **weder... noch ...** are a little different to [entweder ... oder...](#) as these 2 don’t take up one slot all the time.

Now if you have to reject more than two things simply add **nochs** to your sentence:

- Ich mag **weder** “Star Wars Episode 1”, **noch** “Der Weiße Hai 2”, **noch** “Matrix 2”, **noch** “Matrix 3”, **noch**....

And this is already it. This was our German Word of the Day Tag Team Special with **weder... noch...**. I hope you found it helpful and see you next time.

From <<https://yourdailygerman.com/weder-noch/>>

DENN vs WEIL

Thursday, October 25, 2018 3:00 PM

QUESTION:

I know that *denn* does not change the sentence structure of the subordinate clause, but *weil* does, i.e. pushing the verb to the end.

Other than that, is there a difference between the two? Are there situations where *weil* is preferred to *denn* and vice-versa?

From <<https://german.stackexchange.com/questions/5724/difference-between-weil-and-denn>>

ANSWERS:

The differences between "denn" and "weil" are syntactic only.

- "Denn" introduces a **main clause**, which is why, as you say, it "doesn't change the sentence structure". The finite verb remains in second position.
- "Weil" introduces a **subordinate clause**, so the finite verb is moved to the end of the clause.

Another notable syntactic difference is that you cannot begin a sentence with a main clause introduced by "denn", while the equivalent with "weil" is well possible. Compare:

Er nahm einen Schirm mit, weil es stark regnete.
Weil es stark regnete, nahm er einen Schirm mit.

Both these sentences are grammatical. However:

Er nahm einen Schirm mit, denn es regnete stark.
*Denn es regnete stark, nahm er einen Schirm mit.

Here, the first sentence is fine, but the second is not.

Semantically, there is no difference between "denn" and "weil". You will find that "weil" is much more commonly used in spoken German.

The same distinction exists between for/because in English.

"Denn" corresponds exactly in function and meaning to the archaic English conjunction "for", which was common in early modern English:

"Blessed are the meek, **for** they shall inherit the earth."

"Father, forgive them, **for** they know not what they do."

"Weil" is a *subordinate conjunction* equivalent to "because".

"I was absent **because** I was sick".

The semantic meaning is approximately the same, except that the latter more strongly

specifies causation. The grammatical function is different. **Weil/because** introduce *subordinate clauses*, which is important to remember in German because they have a different word order.

From <<https://german.stackexchange.com/questions/5724/difference-between-weil-and-denn>>

I disagree that they are 100% synonymous.

In my experience, **denn** is more common when the causality is less necessary, and the point of the clause is to introduce helpful, but possibly more parenthetical information. **Weil**, by contrast, tends to imply a more strictly necessary condition. For example, I might say:

Ich habe auf ihn geschossen, weil es der Oberst mir befohlen hatte.

but it sounds less exculpatory to say:

Ich habe auf ihn geschossen, denn der Oberst hatte es mir befohlen.

Also, **weil** allows you to add qualifiers, like **nur**. I'm not sure you can say **nur denn**, and if you can, it sounds weird.

There are further differences between **denn** and **weil**, see for instance

Here is a helpful example of when you can use "denn" but "weil" doesn't really make sense:

Er muss müde sein, denn er trinkt viel Kaffee.

"He must be tired, **because / seeing as** he is drinking a lot of coffee."

versus

Er muss müde sein, weil er viel Kaffee trinkt.

"He must be tired, **because / reason being** he is drinking coffee."

"Weil" implies the coffee is causing him to be tired, as if it is the origin of his state of tiredness.

It is a rare situation to run into, but this example at least shines a little light on the difference between the two.

SOURCE: Handbuch zur Deutschen Grammatik Sixth Edition

From <<https://german.stackexchange.com/questions/5724/difference-between-weil-and-denn>>

WANN/WENN/ALS

Tuesday, October 30, 2018 6:28 AM

"als/wenn/wann: when. To refer to a completed event in the past, use als, even if that event went on for a long time (Als ich jung war,...; Als ich fünf war,...). Use wenn with the past tense only if you are referring to a repeated event.

In present and future tense, use **wenn** for when.

Use **wann** only for questions and indirect questions (i.e. a statement without a question mark that directly or indirectly implies uncertainty about when the event will take place)."

als/wenn/wann: when. To refer to a completed event in the past, use **als**, even if that event went on for a long time (**Als** ich jung war,...; **Als** ich fünf war,...). Use **wenn** with the past tense only if you are referring to a **repeated event**.

In present and future tense, use **wenn** for **when**.

Use **wann** only for *questions* and *indirect questions* (i.e. a statement without a question mark that directly or indirectly implies uncertainty about when the event will take place).

Als ich jung war, mochte ich Aal.	When I was young, I liked [eating] eel.
Als ich 5 war, aß ich oft Aal.	When I was 5, I often ate eel.
Als ich nach Ulm ging, aß ich Aal.	When I went to Ulm, I ate eel. [this happened once]
Wenn ich nach Ulm ging, aß ich Aal.	When(ever) I went to Ulm, I ate eel. [this happened repeatedly]
Wenn ich nach Ulm gehe, esse ich Aal.	When I go to Ulm, I'll eat eel [This can also mean: When(ever) I go to Ulm, I eat eel.]
Wann gehst du nach Ulm?	When are you going to Ulm?
Ich weiß nicht, wann ich nach Ulm gehe.	I don't know when I'm going to Ulm [indirect question: the statement directly implies uncertainty about when I'm going].
Es ist egal, wann ich nach Ulm gehe.	It doesn't matter when I'm going to Ulm [indirect question: the statement indirectly implies uncertainty about when I'm going].

Note that, although **wenn** can sometimes be translated as **whenever**, as in the fourth and fifth examples above, the best translation for **whenever** is **immer wenn**.

ob/wenn: Both translate *if*, but only one is right in any given sentence. If you **can** say *whether* in English, you **must** use **ob** in German. If you **cannot**, you **must** use **wenn**.

Ich weiß nicht, ob das stimmt.	I don't know whether (if) that is right.
Wenn es stimmt, bin ich froh.	If (whether) it is right, I'm happy.

<http://www.lsa.umich.edu/german/hmr/Grammatik/Konjunktionen/Konjunktionen.html#wann>

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/336784>>

QUESTIONS

Monday, November 5, 2018 6:57 AM

Yes/No Questions

Questions can be asked by **switching the subject and verb**. For instance,

- *Du verstehst das.* (You understand this.)
- becomes
- *Verstehst du das?* (Do you understand this?).

These kinds of questions will generally just elicit yes/no answers. In English, the main verb "to be" follows the same principle. "You are hungry." becomes "Are you hungry?". In German, all verbs follow this principle. **There's no do-support**.

Asking a Question in German With a W-Word

There are seven W-questions in German:

English German

what	was
who	wer
where	wo
when	wann
how	wie
why	warum
which	Welcher

Don't mix up *wer* and *wo*, which are "switched" in English :)

Some of these will change according to case.

Was (what)

If you ask *was* with a preposition, the two normally turn into a new word, according to the following pattern:

English preposition wo-

for what	für	wofür
about what	über	worüber
with what	mit	Womit

If the preposition starts with a vowel, there will be an extra *-r-* to make it easier to pronounce.

This *wo-* prefix does **not** mean "where".

Wer (who)

Wer is declinable and needs to **adjust to the cases**. The adjustment depends on what the question is targeting.

If you ask for the subject of a sentence (i.e. the nominative object), *wer* (*who*) remains as is:

- *Wer ist da?* (*Who is there?*).

If you ask for the direct (accusative) object in a sentence, *wer* changes to *wen* (*who/whom*). As a mnemonic, notice how *wen* rhymes with *den* in *den Apfel*.

- *Wen siehst du? — Ich sehe den Hund.*
• (*Whom do you see? — I see the dog.*)

You will soon learn about the Dative case. You have to use *wem* then. And there is a fourth case in German (Genitive). You would use *wessen* here. This corresponds to English "whose".

The endings look like the endings of *der* (but don't change with gender/number):

case masc. Form of *wer*

nominative	der	wer
accusative	den	wen
dative	dem	Wem

Welche(r/s) (which)

Welche- words are used to ask about for a specific item out of a group of items, such as "which car is yours?".

This declines not only for case, but also for gender. The endings are the same as for definite articles:

article *welch**

der	welcher
das	welches
die	welche
die (pl.)	welche

den welchen

Wo (where)

In German, you can inquire about locations in several ways.

Wo (where) is the general question word, but if you are **asking for a direction** in which someone or something is moving, you may **use *wohin*** (where to).

Consider these examples:

- *Wo ist mein Schuh?* (Where is my shoe?)
- *Wohin gehst du?* (Where are you going (to)?)

Furthermore, *wohin* is separable into *wo + hin*:

- *Wo ist mein Schuh hin?* (Where did my shoe go?)

The same goes for *woher* (where from):

- *Woher kommst du?* (Where are you from)

might become

- *Wo kommst du her?*

English	German
where	wo
where to	wohin
where from	woher

Wann (when)

Wann (when) does not change depending on the case. *Wann* can be used with conjunctions such as *seit* (since) or *bis* (till):

- *Seit wann wartest du?* (Since when have you been waiting?)
- *Bis wann geht der Film?* (Till when does the movie last?).

Don't confuse *wann* with *wenn* which you learned in Conjunctions. Both translate to "when" in English, but they have different functions in German.

- *Wann kommst du?* (When are you coming?)
- *Ich schlafe nicht, wenn ich Musik höre.* (I don't sleep when I listen to music)

Warum (why)

Warum (why) is also not declinable. It will never change endings. *Wieso*, *Weshalb*, and *Weswegen* can be used instead of *Warum*. There's no difference in meaning.

Here is an example. All four following sentences mean "Why is the car so old?".

- *Warum* ist das Auto so alt?
- *Wieso* ist das Auto so alt?
- *Weshalb* ist das Auto so alt?
- *Weswegen* ist das Auto so alt?

Wie viel vs. wie viele

Wie viel is used with uncountable or countable nouns (how much/how many), and **wie viele** is only used with countable nouns (how many). Some people think that "wie viel" can only be used with uncountable nouns, but that is not true.

- *Wie viel* Milch trinkst du? (How much milk do you drink?)
- *Wie viel(e)* Tiere siehst du? (How many animals do you see?)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/questions-2/tips-and-notes>>

WHO

Monday, November 5, 2018 11:14 AM

Like who or whom, the different forms of "wer" ask for people, not for things. Note that the following explanation is a rough guideline; it's not complete.

1) Wer (who) = nominative case (asks for the subject)

Ex. **Der Mann** sieht die Frau. (**The man** sees the woman).

Wer sieht die Frau? (Who sees the woman?) - The man.

2) Wen (who[m]) = accusative case (asks for the direct object)

Ex. Der Mann sieht **die Frau**. (The man sees **the woman**).

Wen sieht der Mann? (Who(m) does the man see?) - The woman.

3) Wem (to whom) = dative case (asks for the indirect object)

Der Mann schreibt **der Frau** einen Brief. (The man writes a letter **to the woman**).

Wem schreibt der Mann einen Brief? (To whom does the man write a letter?/Who does the man write a letter to?) - To the woman.

As for "Who meets whom?"

Ex. Peter meets Sara. (Peter trifft Sara)

Peter is the subject; Sarah is the direct object. Thus, you replace "Peter" with "wer" and "Sarah" with "wen".

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/1172727/Who-meets-whom>>

FAMILY

Monday, November 5, 2018 11:27 AM

Informal and formal words for family members

Just like in English, there are informal and formal words for "mother", "father", "grandmother", and "grandfather". Note that in German, the difference between formal and informal is a lot more pronounced than in English. The informal terms are pretty much only used within your own family.

formal	informal
die Mutter (the mother)	die Mama (the mom)
der Vater (the father)	der Papa (the dad)
die Großmutter (the grandmother)	die Oma (the grandma)
der Großvater (the grandfather)	der Opa (the grandpa)

Family plurals

You might notice that most members of the close family have their own "system" of plurals:

singular	plural
die Mutter	die Mütter
der Vater	die Väter
der Bruder	die Brüder
die Tochter	die Töchter
die Schwester	die Schwestern

Schwester has an extra *-n*, because it can't change its vowel (*e* has no umlaut).

Eltern

Eltern (parents) has no singular, unlike in English. We normally refer to *Mutter* or *Vater* then.

If necessary, there is a word *das Elternteil* (literally, "the parents part"). But this is only used in formal settings, for example on forms.

Alternative words for family members

There are countless alternative words for certain family members. A lot of them are regionalisms or influenced by your own family's heritage. Some of them are ambiguous as

well. For instance, some people call their father "papa", and some people call their grandfather "papa".

We can't accept all these terms, and since translations used in the German course for English speakers may also pop up in the English course for German speakers, we don't want to confuse German speakers with these words. Please understand that we're not going to add more alternatives. In your own interest, stick to the ones suggested by Duolingo

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Family-1/tips-and-notes>>

FAMILY II

Wednesday, December 5, 2018 7:43 AM

Tall and short people

Tall people are *groß*, not *hoch*, and short people are *klein*, not *kurz*. This is why German people will often refer to tall people as "big" :)

Cousin, Cousine

These are French words. While it is possible to write *Cousine* as *Kusine* now, German never found a way to actually spell *Cousin* differently. This is because German originally does not have the French sound at the end. Some people pronounce it like "Kusäng" instead.

Die Frau kennt seinen Onkel - Why not ihren Onkel?

Both *Die Frau kennt ihren Onkel* and *Die Frau kennt seinen Onkel* are grammatically correct, but they don't have the same meaning.

When you say *Die Frau kennt ihren Onkel*, you're either talking about the woman's own uncle, another female person's uncle, or the uncle of multiple people.

When you say *Die Frau kennt seinen Onkel*, you're talking about another person's uncle, and that person is male. People can know other people's relatives.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Family-2/tips-and-notes>>

PREPOSITIONS

Friday, November 9, 2018 6:55 AM

Prepositions

Prepositions take a noun (or a noun phrase):

- I talk *with a friend from school*.

In German, prepositions will change this noun into one of the cases (but never into nominative).

Here, you learn those that always trigger the accusative case.

Remember that as long as the noun is not masculine singular, the nominative and the accusative will look the same.

- *Der Hund trinkt den Saft.* (both are masculine)
- *Die Katze trinkt die Milch.* (both are feminine)

Accusative prepositions

Accusative prepositions *always* trigger the accusative case.

- **Nicht ohne meinen Hund!** (Not without my dog!)
- Die Suppe ist **für den Mann ohne Zähne**. (The soup is for the man without teeth.)

German has these common accusative prepositions: **durch, für, gegen, ohne, um**

Entlang

Entlang is a strange word :) It is commonly used with the accusative case. But then it has to appear **after the noun**.

- Ich gehe *den Fluss entlang*. (I walk along the river.)

It can be used before the noun, but then triggers a different case. This sounds a bit old-fashioned or stilted today. So better use it after the noun.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Accusative-Prepositions/tips-and-notes>>

NUMBERS (ZAHLEN)

Monday, November 12, 2018 7:09 AM

Numbers in German (Deutsch)

How to count in German with cardinal and ordinal numbers.

Click on any of the numbers that are links (blue) to hear them spoken. If you can provide recordings, corrections or additional translations, please [contact me](#).

Numeral	Cardinal	Ordinal
0	null	
1	eins	erste
2	zwei	zweite
3	drei	dritte
4	vier	vierte
5	fünf	fünfte
6	sechs	sechste
7	sieben	siebte
8	acht	achte
9	neun	neunte
10	zehn	zehnte
11	elf	elfte
12	zwölf	zwölft
13	dreizehn	dreizehn
14	vierzehn	vierzehn
15	fünfzehn	fünfzehn
16	sechzehn	sechzehn
17	siebzehn	siebzehn
18	achtzehn	achtzehn
19	neunzehn	neunzehn
20	zwanzig	zwanzig
21	einundzwanzig	(-ste from here on)
22	zweiundzwanzig	
23	dreiundzwanzig	
24	vierundzwanzig	
25	fünfundzwanzig	
26	sechsundzwanzig	
27	siebenundzwanzig	
28	achtundzwanzig	

29	neunundzwanzig	
30	dreißig	
40	vierzig	
50	fünfzig	
60	sechzig	
70	siebzig	
80	achtzig	
90	neunzig	
100	hundert	
1.000	tausend	
10.000	zehntausend	
100.000	hunderttausend	
1.000.000	eine Million	
1.000.000.000	eine Milliarde	
1.000.000.000.000	eine Billion	

Fractions, decimals and percentages

	How to pronounce them
0,0	Null Komma nichts
0,1	Null Komma eins
0,12	Null Komma zwölf / Null komma eins zwei
1/2	ein Halb
1/3	ein Drittel
1/4	ein Viertel
1/5	ein Fünftel
1/6	ein Sechstel
3/4	drei Viertel
%	das Prozent, das Prozentzeichen
50%	fünfzig Prozent

Note

Decimal point = das Komma (comma) - introduced to Europe by the German mathematician and astronomer Johannes Kepler.

Hear some German numbers:

1 eins	11 elf	10 zehn	21 einundzwanzig	100 ein<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
2 zwei	12 zwölf	20 zwanzig	22 zweiundzwanzig	200 zwei<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
3 drei	13 dreizehn	30 dreißig	33 dreiunddreißig	300 drei<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
4 vier	14 vierzehn	40 vierzig	44 vierundvierzig	400 vier<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
5 fünf	15 fünfzehn	50 fünfzig	55 fünfundfünfzig	500 fünf<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
6 sechs	16 sechzehn	60 sechzig	66 sechsundsechzig	600 sechs<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
7 sieben	17 siebzehn	70 siebzig	77 siebenundsiebzig	700 sieben<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
8 acht	18 achtzehn	80 achtzig	88 achtundachtzig	800 acht<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
9 neun	19 neunzehn	90 neunzig	99 neunundneunzig	900 neun<hundred< b=""></hundred<>

<https://youtu.be/c6hWYuoQadE>

From <<https://www.omniglot.com/language/numbers/german.htm>>

DATIVE CASE

Tuesday, November 13, 2018 11:28 AM

The Dative Case

Welcome to the third important case in German :) Later on, there will be a last, less important one.

Remember the Accusative ?

You already saw that the **accusative case** can be used in different ways.

It can signify the *object of a sentence*:

- Der Hund frisst *den Vogel*. (The dog is eating the bird.)

This is called the **direct object** (or **accusative object**).

It can also be used *in combination with some prepositions*:

- Sie geht *ohne den Hund*. (She walks without the dog.)
- Er hat einen Mantel *ohne Knöpfe*. (He has a coat without buttons.)

Dative object

The **dative case** also **has a range of different functions**.

In this lesson, you learn to use it with the **indirect object**. This is also called the **dative object**.

The indirect object in a sentence is the **receiver of the direct (accusative) object**.

For example, *Frau* is the indirect (dative) object in:

- Das Mädchen gibt *einer Frau* den Apfel. (A girl gives the apple *to a woman*.)

You can think about it as "the other person involved" in a transaction.

- Ich gebe *dem Mann* einen Apfel. (I give *the man* an apple.)
- Sie zeigt *dem Kind* den Hund. (She shows *the child* the dog.)

Generally, the **dative object comes before the accusative object**.

Dative verbs

The dative is also used for certain dative verbs such as *danken* (to thank) and *antworten* (to answer), or *helfen* (to help):

- Ich danke *dem Kind*. (I thank the child.)
- Ich helfe *der Frau*. (I help the woman.)
- Ich antworte *meinem Bruder*. (I answer my brother.)

These verbs don't have an accusative object.

Dative articles

Note that the **dative changes all articles for the words**.

For example, *die Katze* is a feminine noun. However, the article in dative will be *der*. This might look like the masculine article. But in the context of a sentence, there will never be any confusion between the two, as long as you know your genders. This is one reason why it's so important to know the gender of a word.

definite articles Nominative Accusative Dative

masculine	der	den	dem
neuter	das	das	dem
feminine	die	die	der
plural	die	die	den

indefinite articles Nominative Accusative Dative

masculine	ein	einen	einem
neuter	ein	ein	einem
feminine	eine	eine	einer
plural	(keine)	(keine)	(keinen)

Notice how **masculine and neuter look the same in Dative**(just like they look the same for Nominative indefinite articles).

This also means that if you see a noun in the Dative, and the article ends in *-r*, it will be a feminine word. Alternatively, if it ends in *-m*, it won't.

It is very much **worth remembering these Dative endings**, because they will pop up in different context, and help you a lot to sort out the grammar. In a way, Dative is the "simplest" case :)

Dative endings

Masculine/Neuter -m

Feminine -r

Plural -n

Plural Nouns in Dative

Here's a great rule:

Plural Dative: Everything gets an -n

(Insert Oprah Winfrey GIF here)

You just saw that articles (also pronouns etc.) get an *-n* ending in dative plural.

Later, you will learn that the German ending system for adjectives is a bit complicated. However, in dative plural, you just **add an -n**.

It goes so far that even **plural forms of nouns get an extra -n in the Dative**.

- Er hat *drei Hunde*. Er spielt *mit drei Hunden*. (He plays with three dogs.)
- Die Computer sind alt. Ich antworte *den Computern*. (I answer the computers.)

There are two "exceptions":

- If the plural already end in *-n*, you're set.
- If the plural ends in *-s*, there's also no change.

Even more -n

Some masculine nouns add an -en or -n ending in the dative and in all other cases besides the nominative. For example in the dative, it is *dem Jungen* (the boy).

If you want to look these up, the term for them is "n-Declension".

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Dative-Case/tips-and-notes>>

DATIVE II

Wednesday, November 14, 2018 5:28 AM

"They are giving water to the women."

Translation: Den Frauen geben sie Wasser.

You can also say "Sie geben den Frauen Wasser."

QUESTION

What is wrong with "Sie geben Wasser den Frauen"?

ANSWER

If you have both a dative and an accusative object (roughly corresponding to direct and indirect object in English) there are rules how to order them:

1) if both objects are pronouns, it is , e.g. "Sie geben es ihnen" (= "they are giving it to them").

2.) if both objects are not pronouns, it is exactly the other way round , e.g. "Sie geben den Frauen das Wasser" (= "they give the water to the women / they give the women the water").

3.) if only one of the two objects is a pronoun, it goes first, independent of the case, e.g. "Sie geben ihnen das Wasser" (= "they give them the water") resp. "Sie geben es den Frauen" (= "they give it to the women").

Besides that, it is always possible to put one of the objects in the very beginning of the sentence in order to particularly stress them: "Den Frauen geben sie das Wasser", "Das Wasser geben sie den Frauen", "Den Frauen geben sie es", "Das Wasser geben sie ihnen", "Ihnen geben sie das Wasser", "Ihnen geben sie es". Well, it sounds odd with an accusative pronoun in this position (but grammatically possible).

DATIVE PRONOUNS

Friday, November 30, 2018 6:26 AM

Personal Pronouns in the Dative Case

Many words change in the dative case. For the third person pronouns, the following are different from the nominative case: the masculine pronoun is *ihm* (to him), the feminine is *ihr* (to her), the neuter is *ihm* (to it), and the plural is *ihnen* (to them).

Nominative	Accusative	Dative
ich (I)	mich (me)	mir (to me)
du	dich	dir
er / es / sie	ihn / es / sie	ihm / ihm / ihr
wir	uns	uns
ihr	euch	euch
sie	sie	ihnen

Some observations:

- In dative, *mir*, *dir*, *ihr* (to me / you / her) rhyme.
- In the **third person**, the **endings are the same as for the articles**: *-m*, *-r*, *-n*. However, plural dative is "ihnen" (not *ihn*, as you might expect).
- In the second person plural, accusative and dative pronouns are the same.

Now you can understand why, when thanking a female person, it is only correct to say *Ich danke ihr* ("I thank her", literally "I give-thank to her") and not *Ich danke sie* (that sounds like "I thank she" would sound to an English speaker).

Dative verbs

Remember that some verbs have a dative object. This is just a quirk of German. There was a reason for it when these words were created, but it's not easy to understand anymore, after a lot of language change.

In short, you just have to learn these :) There aren't very many.

Gehören literally means to "belong to". But don't translate too literally, often a different translation will be more natural.

- Wem gehört das Kleid? ("Whose dress is it?" - Literally, "Whom does the dress belong to?")

POSSESSIVE

03 December 2018 13:41

German Possessive Adjectives

Posted: 01/06/2011 | Categories: [German Grammar](#) | [1 Comment](#) | [Share This Post](#)



Possessive Adjectives

In this blog we will explain possessive adjectives like **my, your, her, his** etc. These words are used in combination with a noun to show that something or someone belongs to someone. Depending on the case and if used in singular or plural the possessive adjective will change its ending.

Possessive Adjectives Table

	German	English
ich	mein	my
du	dein	your
er	sein	his
sie	ihr	her
wir	unser	our
ihr	euer	your
sie (plural)	ihr	their
Sie (polite singular + plural)	Ihr	your

Possessive Adjectives and the Cases

	Nominative	Accusative	Dative	Genitive
Singular (der)	mein	meinen	meinem	meines
Singular (die)	meine	meine	meiner	meiner

Singular (das)	mein	mein	meinem	meines
Plural	meine	meine	meinen	meiner
Singular (der)	dein	deinen	deinem	deines
Singular (die)	deine	deine	deiner	deiner
Singular (das)	dein	dein	deinem	deines
Plural	deine	deine	deinen	deiner
Singular (der)	sein	seinen	seinem	seines
Singular (die)	seine	seine	seiner	seiner
Singular (das)	sein	sein	seinem	seines
Plural	seine	seine	seinen	seiner
Singular (der)	ihr	ihren	ihrem	ihres
Singular (die)	ihre	ihre	ihrer	ihrer
Singular (das)	ihr	ihr	ihrem	ihres
Plural	ihre	ihre	ihren	ihrer
Singular (der)	unser	unseren	unserem	unseres
Singular (die)	unsere	unsere	unserer	unserer
Singular (das)	unser	unser	unserem	unseres
Plural	unsere	unsere	unseren	unserer
Singular (der)	euer	euren	eurem	eures
Singular (die)	eure	eure	eurer	eurer
Singular (das)	eures	eures	eurem	eures
Plural	eure	eure	euren	eurer
Singular (der)	ihr	ihren	ihrem	ihres
Singular (die)	ihre	ihre	ihrer	ihrer
Singular (das)	ihr	ihr	ihrem	ihres
Plural	ihre	ihre	ihren	ihrer
Singular (der)	Ihr	Ihren	Ihrem	Ihres
Singular (die)	Ihre	Ihre	Ihrer	Ihrer
Singular (das)	Ihr	Ihr	Ihrem	Ihres
Plural	Ihre	Ihre	Ihren	Ihrer

Examples:

Nominative:

Das ist mein Auto.
 Ist das deine Katze?
 Meine Mutter ist seine Lehrerin.
 Mein Bruder ist ihr Ehemann.
 Unsere Söhne sind schon erwachsen.
 Ist das euer Garten?
 Ihre Freundin hat Krebs.

Ist das Ihre Frau?

Accusative:

Ich habe meinen Hund verloren.
Ich liebe deinen Bruder.
Sam besucht seinen Vater.
Ich habe ihre Kreditkarte gefunden.
Er macht unseren Garten schön.
Liebt ihr eure Kinder?
Max und Nadine besuchen ihre Oma.
Ich habe Ihre Tochter gestern gesehen.

Dative:

Er gratuliert meiner Tochter zum Geburtstag.
Ich helfe heute deiner Mutter.
Er gibt seiner Frau einen Kuss.
Sie schenkt ihrem Sohn ein Auto.
Er gibt unseren Töchtern Nachhilfe in Mathe.
Ich rate eurem Sohn zum Arzt zu gehen.
Wir helfen ihren Schülern.
Ich gratuliere Ihrer Frau zur Beförderung.

Genitive:

Das Auto meines Sohnes ist kaputt.
Wieso ist das Kind deiner Tochter so frech?
Die Mutter seiner Lehrerin ging mit mir in die Klasse.
Der Chef ihrer Freundin ist sehr locker drauf.
Der Tierarzt unserer Katze ist heute gestorben.
Das Haus eurer Eltern ist sehr schön.
Die Autos ihrer Söhne sind alle kaputt.
Der Koffer Ihrer Frau ist sehr schwer.

From <<http://www.jabbalab.com/blog/2402/german-possessive-adjectives>>

<http://www.jabbalab.com/blog/2402/german-possessive-adjectives>

DATIVE PREPOSITIONS

Thursday, December 6, 2018 12:23 PM

Dative prepositions

Earlier, you learned that some prepositions always trigger the accusative case.

The most common ones are **durch, für, gegen, ohne, um**.

In the same way, dative prepositions **always** trigger the dative case.

Again, here are the common ones: **aus, bei, gegenüber, mit, nach, seit, von, zu**.

Contractions

Some prepositions and articles can be contracted.

preposition + article contraction

bei + dem	beim
von + dem	vom
vor + das	vors
zu + dem	zum
zu + der	zur

There are some more, which you will learn later.

Seit

Seit roughly means "since". However, it works a bit differently.

First, it always denotes something that is **still going on**.

Second, it has **three different ways** of usage.

Consider these examples:

- Ich lerne *seit sechs Jahren* Englisch. (I'm learning English for six years now.)
- Ich lerne *seit 2012* Englisch (I've been learning English since 2012.)
- Ich lerne Englisch, *seit ich denken kann*. (I've been learning English since I can think.)

In the first example, *seit* defines a stretch of time, which reaches into the present.

In the second example, it also defines a stretch of time, reaching into the present. But it defines this stretch of time by its starting point.

Seit can also be a subordinating conjunction (check the lesson "Conjunctions"). In these, the verb leaves the second position of the sentence, and ends up at the end. This is why in the last example, *ich kann denken* (I can think) turns into *seit ich denken kann*.

Zu Hause vs. nach Hause

Zu Hause means *at home*, and *nach Hause* means *home(homewards, not at home)*. The *-e* at the end of *zu Hause* and *nach Hause* is an archaic dative ending, which is no longer used in modern German, but survived in certain fixed expressions.

- Ich bin zu Hause. (I am at home.)
- Ich gehe nach Hause. (I am walking home.)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Dative-Prepositions/tips-and-notes>>

HUMAN BODY

Sunday, December 9, 2018 1:29 PM

Hals

Der Hals refers to the whole connection between head and shoulders. German does have more specialized words for "neck" and "throat", but we normally use *Hals* for both.

Haare

Das Haar normally refers to a single hair. It *can* be used to refer to all the hair on someone's head, but is considered slightly outdated or poetic.

- Seine Haare sind lang. (ok)
- Sein Haar ist lang. (sounds a bit old)

Bein

Das Bein refers to the leg. It used to mean "bone" a long time ago. This meaning survives in some word combinations:

- Elfenbein (ivory, literally "elephant bone")
- Eisbein (pork knuckle, literally "ischias bone", because it referred to hip meat before)
- Beinhaus (bone house)
- Gebein(e) (a collection of bones)

Magen

Der Magen is the stomach, the part of your body that starts digestion. It is not commonly used to refer to the belly (*der Bauch*).

Brust

Die Brust can have several meanings, depending on context.

- Komm an meine Brust! - This means the chest area. It will always be used in the singular.
- Vögel haben keine Brüste. (Birds don't have breasts) - This refers to female breasts. It can be used in the singular.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Body-and-parts-of-the-body-1/tips-and-notes>>

FORMAL "YOU"

Monday, December 10, 2018 5:16 AM

Surprise! There's another way of addressing people. The good news is: it's super easy. Just use the "they" forms when talking to people you're not close with.

Need more details? Then read on :)

German You: Who are you talking to?

In English, "you" can be either singular or plural, and no distinction is made between formal and informal. In German, there are **three ways of saying "you"**.

Du (Singular Informal)

If you are **familiar with someone**, you use **du** (which is called "duzen"). For example, if you talk to your mother, you would say:

- "Hast du jetzt Zeit, Mama?" (Do you have time now, Mommy?).

Use this form for family members, co-students, children and young adults.

Ihr (Plural Informal)

If you **refer to more than one person**, you use **ihr**. This is also a "familiar" form, so use it in the same settings as *du*.

The German *ihr* you learned earlier is the **informal plural** of "you," like in

- Hans und Karl, habt ihr Zeit? (Hans and Karl, do you have time?)

Sie (formal both Singular and Plural)

If you are **not familiar** with someone or still wish to stay **formal and express respect**, you use **Sie** (so-called "siezen"). For example, you would always address your professor like this:

- Haben *Sie* jetzt Zeit, Herr Schmidt? (Do you have time now, Mr. Schmidt?)

Sie is also used for multiple people. But you can't translate it well with "you all" or "you guys", because that would sound too informal.

Here are the three forms of "you", and "they" for comparison:

English person	ending	German example
----------------	--------	----------------

you (singular informal)	-st	du trinkst
-------------------------	-----	------------

you (plural informal)	-t	ihr trinkt
-----------------------	----	------------

you (formal)	-en	Sie trinken
--------------	-----	-------------

they	-en	sie trinken
------	-----	-------------

When spoken, "**they** and formal "you" are identical. So, in a way, Germans formally address people like "How are they today?"

How do you know if *sie* means "she", "they", or "you"?

You can distinguish the formal *Sie* from the plural *sie* (they) because the **formal *Sie* will always be capitalized.** However, it will remain ambiguous at the beginning of written sentences.'

For instance, *Sie sind schön.* can either refer to a beautiful individual or a group of beautiful people. The verbs for *sie*(they) and *Sie* (you) are conjugated the same. On Duolingo, either should be accepted unless the context suggests otherwise. In real life, there's always context. Don't worry about misunderstandings.

Fortunately, the **verb for *sie* (she) is different.** *Sie ist schön.* only translates to "She is beautiful." There's no ambiguity.

Other formal "you"s

There are more ways to address people formally in German, but they are not in common use and/or outdated, so we don't support them in this course. You might encounter them in Middle Ages reenactments or so :)

The *third person singular* was used:

- Hat er heute gut geschlafen? (literally, "Has he slept well today?")

The *second person plural* was also used, and is still used locally:

- Ihr habt einen schönen Hut. (literally, "You all have a nice hat.")

You will encounter the informal you in this skill as well

As some of the sentences in this skill are shared among multiple skills, you will encounter the informal you in this skill as well. For technical reasons, this cannot be changed at this point. Please do not send a report regarding this issue.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Formal-you/tips-and-notes>>

SOME (IRGEND)

Wednesday, December 12, 2018 5:04 AM

Word of the Day – “irgend”



— just some beach...

So, today we'll look at the meaning of the super common **irgend-**

and that means we'll explore the origin, talk about the easy words like **irgendwann** or **irgendwo** and we'll also find out about the differences between **etwas** and **irgendetwas** and **jemand** and **irgendjemand**.

The origin of irgend

As so many of the words we have talked about recently **irgend** used to be 2 words back 1000 years ago: **io** and **(h)wergin**. **Io** is the great great grandfather of the German word **je** that has starred in movies like “**Je... desto...** 2 cops re-compensate”, “**Jemals**, a story of the time lost” or “**Jeders** darling”. What does **je** mean exactly? Well, that would take up an article of its own so we'll have to skip that for now. But what I will tell you is that **io** is coming from an old Germanic word **a**, meaning **always, ever**, and this the root for **ever** and **every**. Now... the second part of **irgend** was **(h)wergin** which is basically the old version of the question word **wo** or English **where** mixed with gin.

I was not able to find any information about this gin-suffix but it doesn't really matter... the main things are **io** and **h(wer)** the combination of which meant something like **in some location** or simply: **somewhere**. Soon the Germans fused it into one word, added a d,

because they had done so with **jemand** and **niemand** and so **irgend** was borne and it meant... **somewhere**. Yes, that's right. Actually just **irgend** alone used to mean **somewhere** until 300 years ago. Then, people started using it as a general tool to indicate "some-ness" if you will. On www.dwds.de, I found a sample (sadly, not a full sentence):

- wohl **irgend** 20...
which meant:
- probably **some** 20 or 20 **something**...
This way of using it, however, has somewhat declined, and the only example I can think of is [this](#):
- Versuch, [wenn irgend möglich](#), nicht zu spät zu kommen.
- Try, [if somehow possible](#), not to be late (lit)

There might be others but it is really really rare and the main use of **irgend** today is as a prefix for the question words and some articles and pronouns and it always adds the idea **some** in sense of "don't know exactly".

irgendwie, irgendwo and so on

So **irgendwo** essentially means **somewhere**... and yes, if you look at it from the origin point of view **somewherewhere** :) but I think only few Germans are aware of the origin.

- Gibt es [hier irgendwo](#) eine Bank oder einen Geldautomat?
- Is there a bank or an ATM **somewhere** [around here](#)?
- Ich habe **irgendwo** mein Handy [liegen lassen](#).
- I [left/forgot](#) my phone **somewhere**.

With **wann**, it works just the same. Maybe **somewhen** isn't really used very often.... **irgendwann** certainly is

- Hast du morgen **irgendwann** Zeit?
- Will you be free **sometime** tomorrow?
- Ich will **irgendwann** gern mal nach Australien.
- I'd love to go to Australia **at some point**.

The combination with **wie** gives us one of the most frequently used ones...

- Ich muss **irgendwie** nach München kommen.
- I have to get to Munich **somewhow**.
- Ich habe mir echt Mühe gegeben, aber **irgendwie** kann ich mir den Unterschied zwischen Akkusativ und Dativ nicht merken.
- I've tried really hard but **somewhow** I can't really grasp the difference between accusative and dative.

Irgendwie is used a lot. Sometimes it isn't really translatable.... almost like a particle it just adds the notion of "don't know exactly"

- Heute fühlle ich mich **irgendwie** komisch.
- I feel a little strange today (**can't describe it, don't know why**).
- "Und dann hat er mich voll komisch angeguckt..."
"Wie denn?"
"Na **irgendwie** so halt." (trying to imitate it)
- "And then he gave me this really weird look."
"Like what?"
"I don't know, **kinda** like this I guess..."

So... when you hear **irgendwie** and you can't really make sense of it as somehow... just ignore it :). And those are the most important ones... **irgendwie, irgendwo, irgendwann**. But there is another one... **welche**, which means which. There is no **somewhich** in English... but there is **irgendwelche**, and it means... some... just some as some persons or things.

- Habt ihr noch **irgendwelche** Fragen?
- Do you guys have **some/ any** questions?
- Hast jemand **irgendwelche** Einwände?
- Does anyone have (**any**) objections (**of any kind**)?

All right. Now, if you know German question words you have probably realized that 2 very important ones are missing... **wer** and **was**. But before we get to those and to **ein** and **jemand**, I think we should quickly address another issue. Looking at the last 2 examples one question comes to mind.... "What about any?"

Irgend and any

In English, there are any and some and they kind of mean the same but it depends on the context and the sentence which to use ... I find it really confusing actually and I am glad that all I have to explain is the easy German grammar. But anyway, the question we need to find an answer to is :

*Does **irgend** also mean **any** ?*

And the answer is ... yes, BUT! **Irgend** is also any for any **any** that is kind of **some** and it is the only translation for it.

- Is there an ATM **anywhere**?
- Gibt es hier **irgendwo** einen Geldautomat?

But there is another **any... any** in sense of **every** and that is totally NOT **irgend**. Here are some examples:

- I'll go **anywhere** for you.
- Für dich gehe ich **irgendwo** hin... **is wrong**... it means you go somewhere!!

In German, you can basically just use the every-version

- Für dich gehe ich **überall** hin.... is correct
- "Wann hast du morgen Zeit?"
"Is' egal, ich kann den ganzen Tag."

- “When do you have time tomorrow?”
“Doesn’t matter, any time tomorrow is fine.”
blah blah blah... **wie auch immer**, laber laber laber

So... think of **irgend** as **some** in sense of “not sure which”... it is not **some** in sense of **a bunch** but we’ll get to that later. Okay... so... so far we’ve learned that **irgend** works like the prefix **some** and you can add it to question words. Now let’s talk about **was**.

irgendetwas, irgendwas, etwas, was... wait what???

Was is the German question **what** but it is also a short form of **etwas**.

- Hast du **(et)was** zu trinken?
- You got **some(thing)** to drink?
- This **etwas-was** is used A LOT in daily life. I actually think that I rarely say **etwas** at all. Always **was**.

Now, why I am saying all of this? When we add **irgend** to **was** we get **irgendwas** and based on the logic it should mean **somewhat**. But it doesn’t. I repeat, it does NOT mean **somewhat**... it means **something** and most people perceive it as a short form of **irgendetwas**... which also means **something**. And now we get to the crux... **etwas** in itself already means **something**. So what’s the point of adding a prefix to express the idea of some? What is the difference between **(et)was** and **irgend(et)was**. I can’t give you a catchy answer. I think people just liked their **irgend**-prefix so they added it to **etwas** too. It doesn’t really change the meaning but it makes the thing even more **some**... even less defined, kind of like an **any**.

- Hast du **was** zu essen?
Here, I am hungry and I am asking if there is some food I could eat.
- Hast du **irgendetwas** zu essen?
Here, I am pretty hungry and I indicate that any kind of food is probably fine... no special wishes.
- Hast du **IRGENDwas** zu essen?
Here, I am starving and I will gladly gorge anything you got... kind of like
- Do you have **ANYthing** to eat, no matter what it is.

So... **irgendwas** or **irgendetwas** sound more indefinite than just **was** or **etwas**. And you can stress the **irgend** to make it sound SUPER-indefinite. But don’t try to interpret too much into it... people might just use **irgendwas** because it sounds better rhythmically in some situations.

- “Auf was für einen Film hast du Lust?”
“Hmmm keine Ahnung... **irgendwas** lustiges.”
- “What kind of movie do you feel like watching?”
“Hmmm ... no idea.. **anything** funny is fine/**something** funny.”

Here, **irgendwas** is mainly used for rhythm. Let me modify the example a bit:

- “Auf was für einen Film hast du Lust?”
“Hmmm keine Ahnung... auf jeden Fall **was** lustiges.”

This means the same and it sounds smooth because there is something before the **was**.... “**was** lustiges.”... this just feels a little truncated to me. So... bottom line... don’t think too hard ... just take all 4 versions (**irgend**(et)**was**) as basically the same ... **something**.... or **anything** if

you will. But just to make sure... NOT this **anything**:

- I will do **anything** for you.
Why not? Because that means **everything**... or at least it is closer to **everything** than it is to **something**.
- Ich tue **alles** für dich.

All right. Now let's get to the last question word... **wer**.

irgendwer, irgendjemand and other persons

Wer means **who** so **irgendwer** should mean “**somewho**”, right? It almost does... it means **someone (or anyone)**

- Hat **irgendwer** zufällig ein Feuerzeug?
- Does **anyone** have a lighter by any chance?

And just as with **was**, there already is another word for someone... **jemand**. **Jemand** is a combination of **io** (which was the first part of **irgend**) and the word **man**... which is **man** or **one**. Makes for a nice **someone** :)... however, people were so fond of their **irgend** that they also slapped it on **jemand**... and thus we have **irgendjemand**.... which would technically be **somesomeone** ... this word looks weird by the way... so, what's the difference? Kind of like **was** vs. **irgendwas**... but maybe a little more important. I've read somewhere that **irgendjemand** underlines or indicates that I do not know the person, while **jemand** can be used for people I do know. This did sound adequate at first but I think the line is very very blurry and personal preference as well as flow does play an important role in which word people use.

- Weiß **(irgend)jemand** von euch wie spät es ist?
- Does/do **any** of you know the time?

You can ask that in a room filled with your friends. The **irgend**-version just makes it sound less like you're directly addressing the people and it also kind of implies that knowing what time it is is somewhat rare. But honestly... again, I'd say don't worry too much about finding a difference. The essence of the words is the same. And now what about **irgendwer**... well, this is the same, too. And sometimes people even just use **wer** in sense of someone.

- Kann mir **wer** erklären, warum es so viele Wörter für “someone” gibt?
- Can **someone** explain to me why there are so many words for **someone**?
Irgendwer as a word has more flow in many situations. **Irgendjemand** is a little bit clunky. But again... they all mean **someone**. The situation changes a little when we talk cases... yes, **jemand** and **wer** of are going through the motions. We all do :)
- Ich habe **irgendjemandem/-wem** mein Buch gegeben, aber ich weiß nicht mehr, **wem**?
I gave my book **to someone**, but I don't remember **to whom**.
- Kennst du **irgendwen/-jemanden**, der sich mit Computern auskennt?
- Do you know **someone**, who knows stuff about computers?

Now, I know that you are all like “Soooooo complicated..” but before you start learning Spanish instead let me tell you a trick... just use **jemand** in those examples. It might not be grammatically correct but half of all Germans do it anyway and it doesn't really sound wrong.

Actually, I'd say **jemandem** sticks out more despite or FOR being correct :). All right, we've almost reached the part with the surprise but there is one last thing we need to talk about.

Irgendeinending

Germans also use their “don't know/don't care” prefix **irgend-** in combination with the indefinite article **ein**. So what does this mean exactly? Now, **ein** or in English **a** are not very specific themselves but adding **irgend** makes it even less so... luckily there is an English translation so I don't have to annoy you with endless and twisted attempts at explaining... the translation is ... drum roll... **some**... or **any** of course.

- “Wo hast du diese Rose her?”
“Oh... die hat mir vorhin **irgendein** Typ geschenkt.”
 - “Where did you get this rose from?”
“Oh... **some** guy gave it to me earlier.”
-
- Boah... diese Aufgabe ist echt schwer... hast du **irgendeine** Idee, was wir machen sollen?
 - Boah... this exercise is really tough... do you have **any** idea what we're supposed to do?

So... **irgend** just underlines the “don't know or care which one”-idea.

- **Ein** Apfel...
- **An** apple...
- **Irgendein** Apfel...
- **Some/any** apple...

Now, be really careful not to overgeneralize things here... **irgendein** means **some**... but ONLY for singular things... it is NOT this some:

- I have some apples in my bag.

This is plural and here **some** is used in sense or a few... that has nothing to do with **irgendein**... which is basically “one, no matter which one”. All right... Of course, since **ein** can get all kinds of annoying endings, **irgendein** can get the same ones but ... cases shmases... whom cares.

I think we're good for today :). This was our German Word of the Day irgend. It used to specifically mean **somewhere**, but soon people used it as a general indication of “don't know, don't care”... nowadays it lives on as a prefix for all the question words (except the why-questions) and some other words too... and it always adds the idea of some or any... and if that idea is already present... well... it just makes it “somer”.

If you have irgendwelche questions or suggestions, just leave me a comment. I hope you liked it and see you next time... ... oh and as a little bonus, here is a little vocab-table for you to get the whole picture on things

- **nirgends/nirgendwo** – **irgendwo(wohin)** – **überall**
- **nowhere** – **somewhere/anywhere** – **everywhere / no matter where**

- **nie** – **irgendwann** – **immer**
- **never** – **some time/at some point** – **always/no matter when**

- **nichts** – (irgend)(et)was – **alles**
 - **nothing** – **something/anything** – **everything/all/no matter what**
- *****

- **niemand** – (irgend)jemand/(irgend)wer/irgendwelche – **jeder/alle**
- **no one(body)** – **someone/anyone** – **everyone/no matter who**

From <<https://yourdailygerman.com/meaning-irgend/>>

SHOPPING

Wednesday, December 12, 2018 5:10 AM

Kaufen vs. einkaufen

Kaufen is normally used in the meaning of "to buy":

- Ich **kaufe** einen Hut.

Einkaufen is normally used without an object, and often refers to shopping. It can be used in conjunction with *gehen*:

- Ich *kaufe* im Supermarkt *ein*. (I shop in the supermarket)
- Wann gehst du *einkaufen*? (When do you go shopping?)

Verkaufen means "to sell". The prefix *ver-* is often associated with an "away" notion.

Laden, Geschäft

A variety of words exist for "shop". These are two common ones, with roughly exchangeable usage.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Shopping/tips-and-notes>>

TRAVEL

Sunday, December 16, 2018 12:03 PM

Sehenswürdigkeiten!?

The word *Sehenswürdigkeit* (*sight* as in *sightseeing*) is made up of several meaningful parts: *sehen + s + würdig + keit*.

Let's look at each part and its meaning.

Part	Meaning
sehen	to see
-s-	connecting element
würdig	to be worthy
-keit	noun suffix

Literally *Sehenswürdigkeit* means *something which is worthy to see*.

The connecting element -s- is used to link words together.

The ending -keit turns an adjective into a noun.

Often the ending of a compound noun is a good indicator for the gender of the noun. For example, if a noun ends in -keit, it will always be feminine (die).

Urlaub vs. Ferien

Just like in English there's "holidays" and "vacation", in German there are *Ferien* and *Urlaub*. They can be used interchangeably to some extent.

Ferien only exists as a plural noun:

- Die Ferien sind im Sommer. (The holidays are in summer.)

Urlaub only exists as a singular noun:

- Wann ist der Urlaub? (When is the vacation?)

Visum

In English, you need "a visa". In German, the singular is *das Visum*, *Visa* is the plural (as it is in Latin, the source language of this word).

Weg vs. weg

Der Weg (with a long -e-) roughly means "the path".

- Der Weg ist lang. (The path is long.)

The word *weg* (with a short, open -e-) roughly means "away". Here are some examples:

- Geh weg! (Go away!)
- Ich bin weg! (I'm gone!)

NUMBERS II

Sunday, December 16, 2018 12:03 PM

German numbers

You learned earlier that the numbers from 1-19 are very similar to those in English. This mostly continues in German, with one important quirk. Did you ever notice that the digits in numbers 13-19 are kind of "switched" in English? German continues that through to 99.

So **84** would be ***vier/und/acht/zig*** (literally, four and eighty).

This might take some getting used to, but at least it's consistent ;)

Hundert

For "100", people would usually just say *hundert*, not *einhundert* (as in English).

Huge numbers

There used to be two different systems for huge numbers, called "short scale" and "long scale". Unfortunately, German and American English ended up with different ones. British English used to use the long scale, but switched to short scale.

Number US English (short scale) German (long scale)

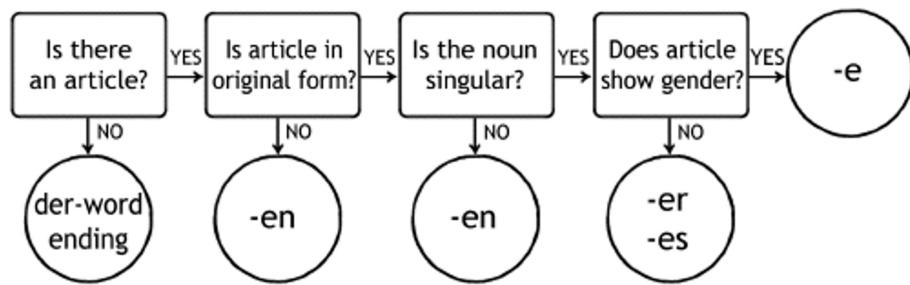
10^6	million	Million
10^9	billion	Milliarde
10^{12}	trillion	Billion
10^{15}	quadrillion	Billiarde
10^{18}	quintillion	Trillion

(10^6 means a one with six zeros)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Numbers-2/tips-and-notes>>

ADJ DEC TABLE

Monday, December 17, 2018 7:37 AM



Deklinationen der Adjektive

„Schwache“	der, die, das / dieser, diese, dieses / welcher, welche, welches			
	M	F	N	Plural
Nominativ	der neue Film	die gute Musik	das kleine Kind	die kleinen Kinder
Genitiv	des neuen Films	der guten Musik	des kleinen Kindes	der kleinen Kinder
Dativ	dem neuen Film	der guten Musik	dem kleinen Kind	den kleinen Kindern
Akkusativ	den neuen Film	die gute Musik	das kleine Kind	die kleinen Kinder
„Gemischte“	ein, eine / mein, dein, sein... , meine, deine, seine / kein, keine			
	M	F	N	Plural
Nominativ	ein neuer Film	eine gute Musik	ein kleines Kind	keine kleinen Kinder
Genitiv	eines neuen Films	einer guten Musik	eines kleinen Kindes	keiner kleinen Kinder
Dativ	einem neuen Film	einer guten Musik	einem kleinen Kind	keinen kleinen Kindern
Akkusativ	einen neuen Film	eine gute Musik	ein kleines Kind	keine kleinen Kinder
„Starke“	M	F	N	Plural
Nominativ	feiner Kuchen	kalte Cola	kühles Bier	gute Freunde
Genitiv	feinen Kuchens	kalter Cola	kühlen Biers	guter Freunde
Dativ	feinem Kuchen	kalter Cola	kühlem Bier	guten Freunden
Akkusativ	feinen Kuchen	kalte Cola	kühles Bier	gute Freunde

- Schwache und Gemischte Deklination der Adjektive:

der, die, das \Rightarrow **-e**

ein \Rightarrow **-er / -es**

Genitiv / Dativ / Plural \Rightarrow **-en**

- Starke Deklination der Adjektive:

Nominativ / Dativ / Akkusativ / Plural = wie der bestimmte Artikel

The logic behind German adjective declension/ endings :)

This finally 'clicked' for me the other day, while trying to explain it in a comment buried in one of the discussions. Since it was so helpful for me to see it written out, I thought I'd share the explanation here too! It might be useful for you if you learn better by 'understanding' rather than memorising the many [declension tables](#).

The logic that I use, is something like:

"The gender/case/number has to be shown somehow, and if it's shown ambiguously then the adjective needs to help out. Otherwise the adjective can relax."

- Following this logic, the three standard singular nominative definite articles (**der/die/das**) all clearly show gender/case/number, so any following adjectives can relax (they get a simple **-e** ending).

Note: Because these 'normal' articles are also used in accusative case for feminine and neuter nouns, this rule also applies there: **Ich sehe das schwarze Buch.**

This also applies if **eine/deine/etc.** is in front, because it shows the singular feminine 'signals' correctly. All the other indefinite articles or possessive determiners are covered in the other rules below.

- In situations where an article is present but modified from any of those three (i.e. **den/dem** or **einen/einem**, or **die** when referring to plurals, **der/einer** when used for feminine articles in dative case, etc.) then the adjective needs to signal that 'something's wrong': It does this by getting an **-en** ending.

Note: This also applies to the situation for masculine/neuter nouns in genitive case where the noun is declined (just think 'the ending is modified'), even if there's no article in the genitive part: **Die Farbe blauen Himmels.**

It also applies to plurals using the negative indefinite article (**keine**) or possessive determiner (**meine/ihre/etc.**) because they're still using the **die** ending for something that's not feminine singular: **Er hat keine guten Freunde**, or **Wir haben ihre alten Schuhe.**

- When there's no article, or there's a 'blank' article like **ein**, then the adjective needs to do all the work. It gets the ending that the definite article *would have had* in the same situation. So if that's nominative neuter: **ein gutes Buch** (would have been **das Buch**). Accusative masculine: **Ich sehe weißen Sand** (would have been **den Sand**).

Etc.

Note: Don't forget the genitive bit in the previous paragraph, though, even if it doesn't have an article.

This also applies if there's a **mein, dein** and even **ihr**, etc. in front - all the 'endingless' possessive determiners, even though they're not technically articles.

Each time I explain that, it becomes clearer in my mind. So, if it's oversimplified and someone notices something missing, please offer a correction!

Sources:

[Wikipedia](#)

[Nthuleen](#)

[Greg's blog](#)

[German is Easy blog](#)

[jess1camar1e's post](#)

[RESE NESE MRMN SRSR](#)

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/14943863/The-logic-behind-German-adjective-declension-endings>>

ADJ END I

Sunday, December 16, 2018 12:03 PM

Adjective endings

When an adjective comes before a noun, its ending will change according to this noun.

- Die Katze ist *alt*.
- Das ist *eine alte Katze*.

Article + Adjective

You can think of the adjective endings as "markers", that kind of mark what part of speech the adjective belongs to.

Nominative

Remember that Nominative is used for the subject of a sentence. These are the **nominative adjectives**:

gender	article	adjective	noun
masc.	der	rote	Hut
	ein	roter	Hut
neut.	das	rote	Hemd
	ein	rotes	Hemd
fem.	die	rote	Rose
	eine	rote	Rose
Plural	die	roten	Schuhe
	keine	roten	Schuhe
	-	rote	Schuhe

While that might look a bit chaotic, there is not so much going on:

1) **Masculine: Either the article, or the adjective** must have the *-r* ending. The same goes for **neuter and -s**.

- *Der kleine Hund spielt.*
- *Ein kleiner Hund spielt.*

2) **Feminine and Plural end in -e.** If you add an article, you also have to add an *-n*.

- *Die alte Katze schläft.*
- *Alte Katzen schlafen.*
- *Die alten Katzen schlafen.*
- *Das sind keine alten Katzen.*

Accusative

Do you remember that quite often, the accusative looks like the nominative? Specifically, only the articles for masculine nouns change.

The same goes for the adjectives. The accusative endings are the same as for Nominative; the only exception is for masculine nouns. The changes are marked in bold in the table

below.

3) Masculine accusative: adjective ends in **-en**

- *Die alte Katze schläft. Der alte Mann sieht die alte Katze*(no change)
- *Die alte Katze sieht den alten Mann.*

	gender	article	adjective	noun
masc.	den	roten	Hut	
	einen	roten	Hut	
neut.	das	rote	Hemd	
	ein	rotes	Hemd	
fem.	die	rote	Rose	
	eine	rote	Rose	
Plural	die	roten	Schuhe	
	keine	roten	Schuhe	
	-	rote	Schuhe	

Dative

Dative, as always, is even simpler.

4) Dative: all adjectives get an **-en** ending

- *Der Hund mit der roten Nase schläft.* (The dog *with the red nose* is sleeping.)

	gender	article	adjective	noun
masc.	dem	roten	Hut	
	einem	roten	Hut	
neut.	dem	roten	Hemd	
	einem	roten	Hemd	
fem.	der	roten	Rose	
	einer	roten	Rose	
Plural	den	roten	Schuhen	
	keinen	roten	Schuhen	
	-	roten	Schuhen	

Remember that in dative,

- masculine/neuter articles end in *-m*
- feminine articles end in *-r*
- plural articles end in *-n*
- and plural nouns (almost) always end in *-n*.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Colors/tips-and-notes>>

German Adjective Endings 1

Or in jargon: declension of adjectives.

Now, if a friend asked you what you did in German class and you said: "Oh nothing special... we just learned the *declension of adjectives*.", that friend will surely tell others about the

incredibly difficult things you have to deal with while learning German. Saying: “Oh nothing special... we just learned which endings to put to adjectives.” sounds by far less impressive. But technically it means the same and this is what we’ll learn in this miniseries.

Now you might ask: “Why should I learn it here? I can learn it somewhere else online for even free-er than here?” To those I say, maybe that is true... you can find other offers out there, but oh... they might use lists and tables though. Taaaaaaaaybullllls. They are bad for the environment, increases global warming substantially and many a fish has died, trapped inside a table that was heedlessly thrown away. That’s why we at German-Is-Easy don’t believe in tables so we have come up with a system to explain the declension of adjectives that is 100 % table free.

German is Easy – sustainable, organic Grammar – ‘cause Earth is worth it.

Oh my... so today we’ll first talk a bit about adjective endings and then I will give you the first of 3 steps to mastery of those things. German has cases. If you didn’t know that yet... we’ll you’re in for a surprise. If you don’t know yet what cases as a concept are, I highly recommend to read [the article about that](#) but it’s also fine if you don’t because you won’t need any knowledge on cases here... as crazy as it sounds. Anyways... cases in German affect mostly the article and the adjectives and not so much the noun itself and the effect is mostly (not exclusively) a change of the ending. That’s why it is NOT **frisch, lecker** and **rot** here although those are the forms the dictionary will give you.

- Ich esse den **frischen, leckeren, roten** Apfel.
- I am eating the **fresh, tasty, red** apple.

The **-en** ending is extra and it is there because the whole object, the tasty, red apple, is in a case.... thank you case, by the way! I wouldn’t know what else to do with all my spare **-ens**. Now, we are learning German here so of course **-en** is not always the correct ending. The ending you have to put to an adjective depends on 3 things... first the gender of a noun, the type of preceding article, and the case. Now let’s do a little math, shall we?.

We have 4 cases, 3 versions of articles... yeah 3 3... definite (the), indefinite (a) and none at all ().... and we have 3 genders plus the plural so it is actually kind of 4 “genders”. This equals a total of $4 \times 4 \times 3 = 48$ possible combinations.

Now, German is not crazy enough to have a distinct ending for each combination... there are only 5 or so... let me list them real quick... e, en, er, es, em... yep, only 5. But still... learning the correct choice for 48 options doesn’t sound like too much fun So how can we go about this? The first way is study it using tables like [these ones](#) and concepts like weak declension and strong declension.... which by the way is something virtually no German has ever heard of.

This method works I guess but people will just doze off while you determine gender and case and then pick the correct one of 3 tables to choose the actual ending from. Remember ... you need to know gender AND case... if you don’t know one, all the tables you have studied will not help you at all. So... learning the declension of adjectives the “old school” way is hard work. But is it worth it?... well not really because:

Adjective endings are NOT crucial for understanding.

A wrong adjective ending is a little bump at most. By no means can it ever alter meaning or hinder understanding. Sure, a German native will hear the mistake but no one would ever blame you for it. So.. another way to approach the whole adjective ending thing is to just ignore it altogether and wait for it to come over time. This is really not a bad idea. Adjective endings is something you need to feel... but maybe you need them for a test or you are not in a German speaking environment or you are too impatient to wait till it sinks in and you want to be proactive.

Well, I think there is a third way to learn it... a sort of compromise between practice and theory and this is what you will learn here. Today we’ll look at the first of 3 steps. It is the easiest and yet the most crucial. Yes you read that right. The thing I am going to tell you gets you about 50% of the way there. The second steps adds another 30 and the final most difficult step makes up the last 20%. So here it is:

Add an e !!!!!!!!

Like.... always! All the time... like with ~~ne~~... very very few exceptions. Whenever you put a descriptive word between an article and a noun you must add an **e** to it no matter what gender, case or article type... just do it. Add an **e**. No thought on gender or any of that crap... just add an **e** and move on.

- Der Kaffee ist heiß – der heiß**e** Kaffee.
- The coffee is hot – the hot coffee.

This is not restricted to like real adjectives like big, small, fast, nice etc, but also to verbs that are used as descriptive words.

- Das Bild ist verkauft – das verkauft**e** Bild.
- The picture is sold – the sold picture.

And if you have more than one descriptive word, **e** 'em all.

- Das Bier ist **lecker, schwarze, groß und kalt** – das **lecker**e**, schwarze**e**, groß**e** und kalt**e**** Bier...
- The beer is tasty, dark, large and cold – the tasty, dark, large and cold beer...

And what if that would sound really stupid? Add **e** regardless. German has no shame there.

- Das Bier ist **leckerer** – das **leckerere**e**** Bier...
- The beer is **tastier** – the **tastier beer...**

There are 2 reasons why adding an **e** is so crucial. See... there are the following possible endings **-e, -er, -es, -en, -em**. One of these five will be correct, no matter what combination of case-gender-article we have, all these endings do have at least an **e**.

So we got already half the ending correct... but that is not what matters, in fact... what matters is rhythm. By adding an **e** you in fact add an extra syllable. That is a huge change... like HUUUUUGE. A German native is so used to this extra syllable. He yearns for it.

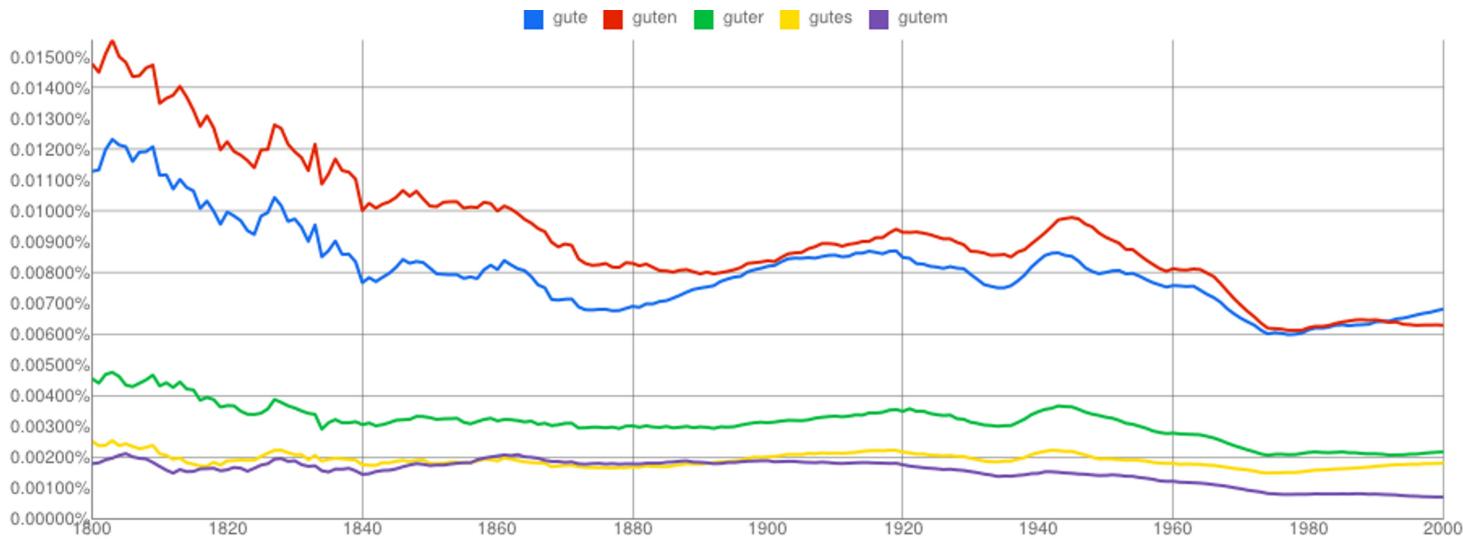
- Ich trinke ein klein Bier.

This sounds real incredib wrong. Yeah... this is how it feels like... You could add an **o** and it would still sound better than without.

- Ich – trin – nke – ein – klei – no – Bier.

The extra syllable just gives it a completely different flow and it sounds and feels sooo much more German. It is not totally correct but the flow is and that is really a big deal. With no extra **e** there you will have 2 emphasized syllables right after one another.

Klein is emphasized because it is a description. If it didn't matter we wouldn't say it at all. Bier is also emphasized because this is the thing we are talking about after all. An extra syllable in between would be not emphasized and would allow for a nice musical stres-no-stress-pattern. So while maybe not the correct ending an extra **e** certainly sets your flow straight so add it. I really can't stress that enough. You don't need to think about cases, gender or anything... just get used to this extra syllable there and the rest will sink in much more easily. But this is not the only reason, why adding an **e** is so important. The second reason is that it is more often correct than a mere guess would be. Check this out:



... I compared **gute**, **guter**, **gutem**, **guten** and **gutes** using Google ngram... It counts how often which form is used in books independent of the context ... the result is clear... the simple **e**-ending is the most frequent with the **-en** in a close second, while the other endings occur way less often. [Try other adjectives if you like...](#) the results will be similar... maybe **-en** is more often at times, but **-e** and **-en** are by far the most frequent ones. So if we were to give guess we should certainly take one of those 2... and I find a simple **-e** the better choice because it is kind of the default....

- der große Mann (nom.)
- die große Frau (nom. + acc.)
- das große Kind (nom. + acc.)
- eine große Frau (nom. + acc.)

These are all in first case and the **e**-ending is correct. Although it is the correct ending for all the plural forms, the **en**-ending is associated with case I would say... like if you just said **schönen**, people would probably think case rather than plural and also, I think people talk in singular more often... so bottom line: the **-e**-ending is the superior choice.

Now, given that you need NO thought at all to add an **e**, it is a pretty good pick I would say. But wait, there is more... how different can **e** and **er** or **e** and **en** sound? If you manage to mumble a bit when it comes to the ending then people will just understand whatever is correct... this is not possible without **e**. You can mumble all you want, if the rhythm isn't correct no one would ever hear it correctly. Now before we wrap I want to tell you something that impressively shows the importance of that extra syllable. There are some descriptions, that are not an adjective per say. For example the phrase **gut genug**.

- Der Wein ist **gut genug**.
- The wine is **good enough**.

In English I can just take **good enough** and put it in front of the wine.

- The old enough wine....

I am not so sure as to how right or wrong this is but I think it is passable at least. In official German this wouldn't work because **genug** cannot get endings, which it would need to do if it were to be in front of a noun. However, every now and then in spoken German someone wants to do what I did in the English example... because expressing the same thing in correct German would call for a new side sentence and a lot of rearranging. To avoid this people sometimes simply take the whole description (**gut genug**) and put it in front of the noun. And now the question... what would a German say then:

- Der **gut genuge** Wein...

- Der **gut genug** Wein...

Either one is grammatically wrong and yet one is wrong the right way and one is not and every German would agree with me. So.... the first version is what a German would say. Although **genug** is officially not changeable, Germans rather break that rule to make it fit with another rule: the adjective ending pattern... and I think at least partially it is because of the rhythm. I mean, it is wrong after all... it should make the synapses in which the grammar is stored fire cringe orders to all muscles... and yet because the rhythm is correct (and the declension) it is way better than just **gut genug**.

So... this was the first of 3 steps to the correct decl... to putting the correct endings to adjectives. Don't think! Just add an e all the time. Do it until you do it automatically... If you have questions or suggestions, leave me a comment. I hope you liked it and see you next time.

From <<https://yourdailygerman.com/adjective-declension-german/>>

ADJ END II

Tuesday, December 18, 2018 6:38 AM

German Adjective Endings 2

Chapter 34: German Adjective Inflection

The correct inflection of an adjective gets depends upon 3 dimensions of the respective noun phrase:

- the grammatical gender of the noun,
- whether it is singular or plural
- type of article that precedes it

This threefold dependency makes choosing the correct adjective ending a quite cumbersome. Before we commence with the actual inflections, we shall do an apace recapitulation of the different types of article as introduced in Chapter 18. An article can be definite, indefinite or void. This trichode... uh... uh trichorder... I ... I don't actually know this word.. something with tri... so... this tri-something analogously exists in English. The subsequent examples may illustrate:

- **The** fast car drives by. (definite)
- **A** large dog barks. (indefinite)
- Red wine goes well with deer. (void)

Definite Article, nominative case

If the article is definite and the case is nominative the correct endings one has to adhere to one's adjective are as follows:

- Der große Mann – **e**
- Die große Frau – **e**
- Das große Auto – **e**

Manifestly, **-e** is correct in all 3 configurations. However, if the noun is plural the ending will be **-en**

- die großen Autos

Thus the first line of the first of 3 tables is complete and reads as follow is **e,e,e,en**.

34.1.2 Indefinite Article, nominative case

With an undefined... uh indefinite detrem...

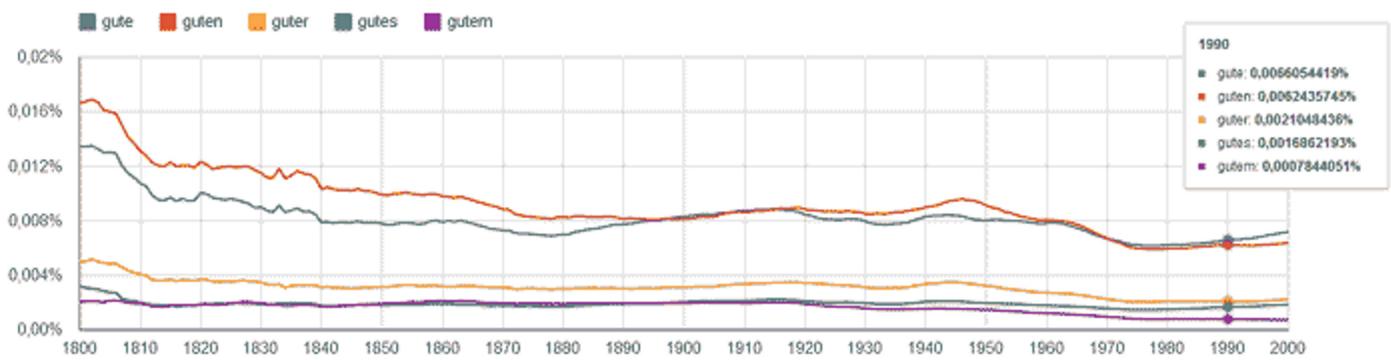
my God, this is so fucking hard to read, ops shit... I shouldn't say f-ing onli.. uh on air so... uh...*indefinite de-ter-mi-ner*... wow, I so do not know what that is, I hope you guys can make sense of all tha.. oh hold on... I think... oh thank God, Emanuel is here... duuuuuude, where have you been, you're like 15 minutes late man.... yeah I know, I'm soooo so sorry what happened man, where have you been.... I ate a huge plate of pasta and then I passed out oh... the post pasta fatigue huh ... yeah, man I juts couldn't keep my eyes open.. oh, I actually feel

like that now after reading this stuff about German here, it is soooo difficult...ahaha sure sounds like it is, I hope that didn't scare away all the listeners... which one is my mic? This one? Perfect, Nick, you're free now and thank you soooooooooooooo soooo much for filling in. ... you owe me one, man... . I know, and also to all the listeners out there. **I am in-cre-dibly sorry!!!!** Shame on me!

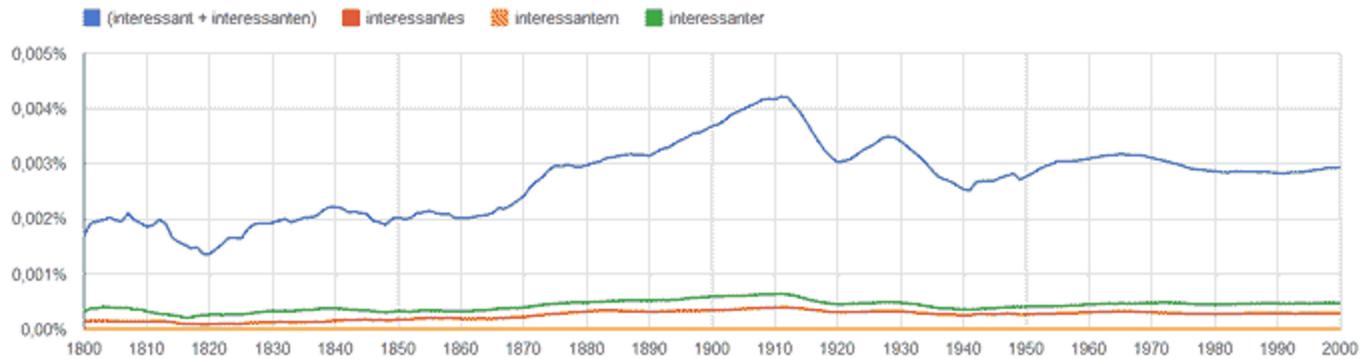
All right... wew...German Adjective Endings 2. So exciting. Just a real quick recap about last time... we learned to ALWAYS add an **-e** without worrying about gender or case or article. Just add an **-e**! There are 2 reasons to do this. First of, **e** is always part of the correct ending and it is correct all by itself about 40% of the time. Not adding anything is ALWAYS wrong. So you get 40% correct for doing nothing but adding an **-e**.

The second reason is a rhythmical one but I suggest you just check out [part 1](#) if you haven't yet.

All right, now... today we'll learn when **-en** is the correct ending. Sounds rather limited but it's not. Actually, it's a giant step... You see **-e** and **-en** together account for about 80% of the adjective endings. So **-er**, **-es** and **-em** each only make up like 7%. And I am not exaggerating here. This is a Google N-Gram for the word **gut**. **Gute** and **guten** clearly dominate.



Let's try another one... how about a longer one like **interessant**. Here, with **interessante** and **interessanten** combined , it is even more obvious.



Go ahead and try out some other ones. I bet you, you can't find one that proves me wrong :). So... as you can see, our approach to German adjective endings is based on statistics and science and we produce concrete, scientific results ... so when is **-en** the correct ending?

Whenever the article is weird.

Oh... uh... and uh... and uhm... when exactly is an article weird? I mean... many of you probably find ALL the German articles weird....

So here is what I mean: there is **der**, **die**, **das** and **ein**, **eine**, **ein**. This is what even absolute beginners know about German. These are the normal articles.

- **der** for a masculine thing (**ein**)

- **die** for a feminine thing (**eine**)
- **das** for a neuter thing (**ein**)

The rest is just weird. **Den** is weird and so is **einen**. **Dem** is weird as is **einem**.

Des is ... uh let me think... WEIRD. And then OMG: der for feminine things like in dative case... LOL I say, LOL... that is just freaking WEIRD. And you know what else is weird: **die** for plural. Die is feminine. Why use it for plural too? That's just random and weird.

So... for all those, the adjective ending will be **-en**. Let's do some examples:

- **Der** groß__ Mann spricht mit **der** schön__ Frau, die die Strasse langläuft.
- The tall guy talks to the pretty woman walking down the street.

We have **der** twice here. With **Mann** it is fine because **Mann** is masculine but with **Frau** it is weird because **Frau** is feminine. So let's fill in endings.

- Der große Mann telefoniert mit der schönen Frau.

Yeay... 2 out of 2 correct. Let's do another one.

- **Die** schön__ Kellnerin gibt **dem** groß__ Mann **den** groß__ Kaffee.
- The pretty waitress gives the tall guy a large coffee.

Die for waitress is fine, but **dem** and **den** are weird. So the endings should be:

- Die schöne Kellnerin gibt dem groß^{en} Mann den groß^{en} Kaffee.
3 out of 3... that smells like an A+ in the exam. But oh... there are examples with **ein** now.
- **Eine** schön__ Frau geht mit **einer** ander__ schön__ Frau in **eine** cool__ Bar.
A pretty woman goes with another pretty woman to a cool bar.
Eine is normal so we'll put **e** there but **einer** is weird so we'll add **en**.
- Eine schöne Frau geht mit einer anderen schönen Frau in eine coole Bar.
And again all correct. One more try, this time with a plural.
- **Die** alt__ Männer lesen in **einem** klein__ Café Zeitung.

Die is weird here, because Männer is plural and don't get me started on **einem**.... so it should be:

- Die alten Männer lesen in einem kleinen Café Zeitung.

And it is. So... for weird articles like **den** or **einem** or **der** for feminine stuff and **die** for plural... add **-en**, for the rest, go with **-e** and that will get you about 80% correct. But there are not only definite and indefinite articles that can precede nouns. What about words like **mein** or **diese** (in grammar jargon those are called something)? Well, you can use the same system here.... when they are weird then add **-en**. All the ones that indicate possession, so my, your, our, their and so forth have the same "weird-pattern" like the indefinite articles **ein/ eine**

- **Mein** and **meine** are normal just like **ein** and **eine** are.
- **Meiner, meines, meinem, meinen** as well as **meine** for plural are WEIRD.
- **unser** and **unsere** are normal... all the others are weird.
- ...

Things like **diese**, **jene** or **welche** and even **manche** work like the definite articles. Normal are:

- **dieser** (for male) – **der**
- **diese** (for female) – **die**
- **dieses** (for neuter) – **das**

All the rest is weird. Is **jenem** weird? Yes. Is **welche** weird when it is asking for plural? Sure is.

- Gestern habe ich **meinen** alt__ Mathelehrer getroffen.
- Yesterday, I met my old math-teacher.

Meinen is weird so we'll go with **-en**.... and it's correct.

- **Welche** berühmten Stars hast du schon mal getroffen?
- Which famous stars have you met?

Why is **welche** weird here? Because it is used for plural. We could say plural articles are weird by default or simply plural is **-en**. Either way, this is basica... oh... my **red exception phone** is ringing... hold on a second.... hey John, how's it going... oh cool, hey man, I'd really like chat a second but I came in late today and I have to hurry a bit so tell me, what did I overlook... what?... genitive?... so?.... oh ohhhh.. do you have an Example by any chance?... what? ... oh, dieses schönen Autos.... oh man, that's right... damn it... my nice simple rule... hey but you know what, I'll just not tell 'em... I mean, they won't be using Genitive anyway, right?... haha, yeah Genitive is like sooooo 18th century... man, thanks anyway John and talk to you soon ok? Cool bye (hang up)... so... all right, now I' back with you guys, and let me tell you what... there is absolutely NOOOO exception to the todays rule whatsoever.

Seriously though, rarely has a rule no exception so this “weird-gets-en” one does too. But I challenge you to come up with a sentence or find one somewhere... it is really rare. And now speaking of a rule having limitations. Well, the **-en**-rule will not get you 100% there. Here's an example where it fails.

- Thomas hat gestern sein neu__ Bett bekommen.

Based on our rule this should be **e** because **sein** is not weird. The correct ending here, however, is **-es** for ... reasons. We'll deal with those in part 3 :).

But keep in mind.. those situations make up only 20 % percent of all adjective endings. Go with **-en** if the article is weird! That gets you 40% correct.

Go with **-e** for all the rest! That will get you another 40% correct and that is a pretty good score considering that you barely had to do the whole case-gender-article-type analysis. Not that there is something wrong with that. If learning the Adjective declension tables works for you, that's great.

And of course the **en-rule** doesn't help at all if you don't know the correct case or the gender... and there will be many many situations. (My advice is, go with feminine).

Adjective endings are something that just needs to come out automatically pretty much and it needs a lot of speaking practice... so give it some time. But what you have learned so far might very well help you to pass some adjective declension quiz... provided you've been learning the gender for things ;).

Actually, I am really wondering on the **-e-rule** and the **en-rule** hold up in a “real” quiz... like the one I found on About.com. There is some tricky stuff in there and you really need to know the gender of things but I am curious how you do and if so here is the link:

[German Adjective Ending Quiz](#)

If you feel like it, try out how much you can score with what you’ve learned here and tell us your result... and if you fail miserably, it is all my fault and my rule sucks. I am a bit nervous actually :).

Anyways... so ... I think we’re done for today. This was the second part on German Adjective Endings and the main thing to remember is to add **-en** when the article is weird.

If you have questions or suggestions or if you want to bitch at me for being late... just leave me a comment.

I hope you liked it and see you next time.

From <<https://yourdailygerman.com/german-adjective-endings-2/>>

ADJ END III

Tuesday, December 18, 2018 6:36 AM

German Adjective Endings 3

[76 Comments](#)

Tagged as: [German Grammar Basics](#), [Grammar](#)

Hello everyone,
and welcome to the last part of the mini series on
German adjective endings.

So far, things were simple. Part 1 (find it [here](#)), the most important one, was about adding an **-e** to the adjective as soon as it precedes a noun, no matter what. Seriously. If you haven't read it, then do it. In part 2 (find it [here](#)) we learned to add an extra **-n** to that whenever the article looks weird. If you just do that, you should get about 70 % correct. Today, we'll take care of the extra 15 %. Oh... I mean 25%. Sorry... haha... a bit shaky with the math right there.

Now, so far it was all easy peasy but this is gonna end today. "German grammar ist kein ponyhof" as a common proverb says. Have you heard of the 80/20 rule? It's like... you can drink 80% of an XXL Latte with hazelnut with joy and little effort but you need to really want to finish it to drink the remaining... uhm... the remaining percent. It's no different for adjective endings. Today will be theoretical and tedious. You will be super exhausted and so frustrated that you will never want to speak German again..

(*wait a second... that's not how they explained it at this "Explain things seminar". What did the guy say? ... uhm... pretend that it's easy... yeah, that's it... quick... must act or I'll lose them*)

and that's why today it'll be surprisingly easy. We'll breeze through a few rules and a few concepts and shabams... we're done. We're basically done already, we just need to wrap up the whole thing. It'll be a walk in the park...

(*By the time they realize it's the Rocky Mountain national park, it's too late...*) guahahhahahaha... oh... did I just do the evil laughter aloud? Damn... anyway... without any further ado, here we go.... with a little bit of background.

THE AWFUL GERMAN MARKING SYSTEM

German. It has **three** way too many genders, **four** way too many cases and **-2715** WAAAAAY too many ways to build the plural. That's why linguists call it a **WTM-language** by the way. But German doesn't only have those forms. It also likes to show them around. Like... you're just sitting there trying to read a book and German keeps waving its grammar in your face.

"Hey look what I got. Look! Masculine singular accusative!", it says. And you're just like "Ugh..."

German is not the only language to do that. Many languages belong to the WTM-club and in most them the grammar is "marked". A very common way of marking things like gender or number are endings. In English an **-s** marks plural for instance. And that's exactly what the adjective endings are doing. Alongside with nouns, articles and pronouns they have to carry around certain marks for gender, case and number.

Now, we could ask "Okay, cool, so... what marker are the adjectives carrying?"
That works fairly well for Spanish

- o – masculine, singular
- a – feminine singular

- os – masculine plural
- as – feminine plural

And it is similarly straight-forward in Italian. But in German it is not that simple. Hey... STOP... come back! You can't run away, you hear me? Learning Spanish will not solve your problems with German. Seriously though, the German marking system is REALLY messed up. Because back in the day, when the question of who has to carry what mark came up in one of the design meetings for the German language, the nouns were quite unwilling to participate. They were like

"We already carry the meaning. We will not carry anything extra. Let the articles do it." Of course the articles weren't too pleased.

"What?! No fair! We are so small and we're supposed to carry gender, case AND number while the nouns only carry ONE thing??? We're articles, not slaves."

And so started a debate that raged on forever. The nouns threatened to go on strike, then the articles threatened to go on strike. Then experts for efficiency were brought in. Then some sound designers. Even a student... he failed you all. And finally, after centuries of barter and bargaining, a compromise was found. A political compromise. And we all know how these THOSE look like... millions of regulations and special cases to satisfy every last group of interest... except the learners, of course.

Is it really THAT messed up? Long answer: Nouns kind of focus on plural, articles on gender and case, but they can use the same form for different things, everyone can carry everything at times or everyone just carries parts of a mark or a mark is missing entirely... it is horribly intertwined...

- den schönen Wagen... accusative – singular – masculine
- der schöne Wagen... nominative – singular – masculine
- der schönen Wagen... genitive – plural – masculine
- den schönen Wagen... dative – plural – masculine

I mean... can you see ANY system in that? And yes, the first and the last one are identical. It is really beyond works. And because this system is so awful, we had our German is Easy grammar team create a visualization. They said they had to use really complicated math and that it needed 3 full days to render... I haven't looked at it myself yet so let's have a look together right now

[**here it is .**](#)

Oh... uhhhhh... I... uhm... it all becomes clear once you see it in 3D, I suppo ... oh wait, never mind. it doesn't. It does in 6D but I haven't had enough glasses for th.. uhm... I mean... I don't have the glasses for that. Anyway... we do not need to understand the whole system. We just need to get our adjective endings right to pass the exam :). All we need to take away from this is that it is a quasi chaotic mess and if you're confused by it that means you're a human being.

So... what's do the adjectives do? They support the articles with their marking chores. To be precise ... the d-articles. Hmm...d-articles. I guess we need to paint some more background...

D-ARTICLES AND EIN-ARTICLES

The d-articles are led by the ones we all know and love... **der**, **die** and **das**. Other ones in that group are **diese/n/m/r/s, jene/n/m/r/s** or **manche/l/k/x/t/β**. Those are pretty hard workers and they do a lot of the marking for gender and case. What do they mar...oh wait...let me guess... it is totally messy and impossible to sum up. If we ignore the plural, a very rough summary is this... in nominative and accusative, the gender is clear while the case is only for

masculine.

- nominative : die, der, das
- accusative: die , den, das

In Dative and Genitive the case is sort of clear.

- Dative: der, dem, dem
- Genitive: der, des, des

Sounds super vague but it's really all we need to know. All right let's talk about the **ein-** articles.

Remember that long debate about who has to carry which mark? Well... the **ein**-articles got themselves some nice privileges. Back in the days, **ein** had argued that **das** in "**das Bier**" had to only refer to one beer, while the **ein** in "**ein Bier**" was potentially referring to every single beer that ever existed. And that, so **ein** said, was much more work than what **das** does.... yeah... I don't get it either. But then the possessives chimed in

... **mein (my)** and **dein(your)** and **unser (our)** and so on and they said " **Ein** is right. It should have to carry less marks than **das**." And then they went on to demand the same for themselves.

"We're carrying info about the owner so we also need marker relief.", they reasoned. They made a convincing argument and eventually this group, the **ein**-articles, were granted a "partial gender waiver". A what?

- **Der** Kaffee ist heiß.
- **Das** Auto ist teuer.
- **Ein** Kaffee ist heiß.
- **Ein** Auto ist teuer.

The **ein-articles** (**ein**-, **kein**-,**mein**-, **unser**...) are basically not making a distinction between neuter and masculine, as we can see in the example. And now we're set for the adjectives... finally.

ADJECTIVES – TAKING UP THE MARK

We've already learned and forgotten that the adjectives support the **d**-articles with their markings. So let's maybe say it again... the adjective endings suppo blah blah blah boring. When there is a such a d-article the adjective kind of only cheers it on.

- **das** schöne Fahrrad
The adjective is just like... "Yeah, nominative or accusative, go **das** go!"
- **dem** schönen Fahrrad
Now it is like "Yeah, NOT nominative or accusative, go **dem**, go!"
We can also reuse what we've learned last time... if the d-article is "normal" then the adjective ends in **-e**. If it is weird, it ends in **-en**.
But the adjective's time to shine comes whenever there is no d-article around. And for one thing, that is the case if we have an **ein-article**. And with those, the adjective will sport the missing gender-marker – s for neuter, e for feminine and r for masculine.
 - da-**s** schöne Fahrrad (the pretty bike)
 - mein schöne-**s** Fahrrad (my pretty bike)
 - de-**r** schöne Mann (the...)
 - ihr schöne-**r** Mann (her pretty man)
 - die schöne Farbe
 - keine schöne Farbe (no nice color)

In the last example, the marker is -e for feminine. But -e is there anyway, so nothing to add

here. For all the othe... wait a second. What about the second example? It is **ihr**. There is no **ein** in **ihr**. But it is a possessive article and those are part of the **ein**-articles, even if some of them have no **ein** in them. And ihr doesn't tell us the gender either. Anyway... for most of the **ein**-articles the adjectives don't have to do extra work, because the **ein**-articles do the same marking as the **d**-ones.

- meinem schönen Mann (to my nice husband)
- unserer netten Lehrerin (to our nice teacher)
- seines schönen Fahrrads (his nice bike's)
- ...

So... when there is an **ein**-article around, the adjective will get the few gender marks that those are missing. Those instances are incredibly common though, so you should really get used to it. If it is just **ein** or **mein** or **dein** or so... an adjective would get the missing mark. **S** for neuter, **r** for masculine.

All right. Now, there is another opportunity for the adjectives to stand in the lime light... when there is NO article around.

- "What are you havin'?"

"Water. No article."

But with ice, please. Because that'll make it cold... you know... like... with an adjec...never mind. Example

- **Cold water** is refreshing.

And in those situations, the German adjective will take up whatever marker the **d**-article would have been carrying and wear it.

- **Da-s** kalte Wasser ist erfrischend.

Kalte-**s** Wasser ist erfrischend.

- De-**r** heiße Kaffee schmeckt gut.

Heiße-**r** Kaffee schmeckt gut.

And it doesn't matter what mark it is. The adjective will take anything...

- Zu de-**m** gute-**n** Wein esse ich Käse. (I eat cheese with the good wine.)

- Zu gute-**m** Wein sag' ich nicht nein. (I don't say no to good wine.)

- Ab de-**r** nächste-**n** Woche habe ich mehr Zeit. (I will have more the starting the following week)

- Ab nächste-**r** Woche habe ich mehr Zeit. (same as above)

Even plural.

- Di-**e** schöne-**n** Frauen trinken Prosecco.

Schön-**e** Frauen trinken Prosecco.

Whatever the **d**-article does, the adjective will do. They are really just copying and there is no special rule or anything. It's like... the d-articles are sort of the standard for what has to be marked, as random as that may be... and the adjectives help out. And that's alrea... wait...

my red exception phone is ringing, let me take this call real quick... hey John man, I totally expected your call today... yeah, I know, I'm so glad I don't have to learn this stuff..... ... haha... definitely... so what do you have for me.... uhu..... oh the Genitive,..... ... fascinating.... see, examples for that are so rare and contrived that I didn't realize... thanks a lot man,

bye... All right. I'm back with you. So this was John from the exception-copter and of course there is an exception to what I just said: In Genitive masculine and neuter singular the adjective will actually NOT take on the mark. Instead it will stick with its -en ending that it is usually wearing if the article is "weird"... as we've learned in part 2. And it does that because... the noun already has the mark... which is an -sby the way... so... **s** marks Genitive and neuter. Did we mention that the marking system is awful? Good.

- Der Geschmack de-**s** teure-**n** Weine-**s** wird überschätzt. (The taste of the expensive wine is often overestimated... is that idiomatic?? Natives to the rescue)

- Teure-**n** Weine-**s** Geschmack wird überschätzt. (The taste of expensive wine...)

For feminine and plural genitive, the adjective will take up the mark though... because it would be missing otherwise.

- Di-**e** hohen Bäume sind beeindruckend. (the tall trees are impressive.)

- Hoh-**e** Bäume sind beeindruckend (tall trees are impressive)

- Der Schatten de-**r** hohen Bäume ist lang. (the shade of the large trees is long)
- Auch hohe-**r** Bäume Schatten ist manchmal nur ein Punkt. (Also tall trees' shade is sometime but a dot.)

The last one is an old Chinese proverb I just made up. They were so wise back then. The meaning is that even a small thing can make a big difference... wait... does that make sense? Anyway. When it comes to adjective endings small things can make a big difference ... but they rarely really do.

They're just there and suck out the fun. Adjective endings, especially if they have to carry the load of the articles is German at its most awful. If I had to learn this I would probably be like... screw that. And that is also my advice for you. Do NOT learn this systematically. Because there is NO system. Just try to pick it up over time by reading things and listening to people talking. The more you force it the more frustrated you will get.

The three things you need to have in the back of your head are the following:

1. add an **-e**. No matter what. It is always there.... okay almost always
2. add an **-en** whenever the article ending is weird or is plural (check out [part 2](#) for more on that)
3. if there is a mark missing the adjective will take it

And the last point is what you need to take home with you of today. There is the concept of "markedness". That is, German marks gender, case and number using endings. The system is downright absurd and attempts at understanding it can lead to brain damage. But the **d-articles** are the reference for what gets marked in a given situation and how. If the **d-article** is missing, the adjective fills in. "Wait... so I have to know the d-article ending in order to get the adjective ending correct?" Exactly. But if you don't know the **d-article** ending for a situation you're not at a stage where you should worry about adjective endings. Not because you're stupid or a beginner or anything. It would be just a waste of time. Just stick with step 1 and 2 and then one day, you will be like

- Wieviel kostet ein große Kaffee... wait... ein großer Kaffee because it is der Kaffee.

Getting those marks right is nothing to stress out about. Just be aware that this system of **markedness** is around, and that the d-articles are the role-model. And that is it. That was our mini series on adjective endings. And if you disappointed now because you were hoping for something more "tangible"... well, at least I think that that is impossible to do. If you really want the specifics then you can always use the tables and all that theoretical crap like strong,weak and mixed declension. Those terms are weapons of mass demotivation and should be banned.

The concept of markedness doesn't tell you right away which ending to use but it is an idea of what's going on under the hood if you will. And it has another benefit... because the very same idea is behind all those weird pronouns

- Wem gehört da-**s** Fahrrad? Das ist mein-**s**.
- To whom does the bike belong? That is mine.
- De-**r** kleine Hund ist ihre-**r**.
- The small dog is hers.
- Bist du mit de-**m** roten oder dem blauen Auto gefahren?
Mit keine-**m**, ich bin gelaufen?
- Which car were you driving with? The red one or the blue?
With neither, I walked.

And that is quite something, I would say... now we don't even have to do a mini-series on THAT mess :).

That's it with the adjective endings. If you have any questions or suggestions or if you want me to give you more examples – I feel like I have been a bit stingy today :) – just leave me a comment.

I hope you liked it and see you next time.

Oh by the way... here's a [small exercise](#). And if you fail, then it's my fault :)

IMPERATIVE

Tuesday, December 18, 2018 7:59 AM

Imperative

The imperative mood is used to express commands, just like in English. There are three different forms, according to the three types of "you" in German.

Du imperative

The imperative for *du* is very similar to English:

- *Du gehst nach Hause.* (You go home.)
- *Geh nach Hause!* (Go home!)

For most verbs, to come up with the correct verb form, just lose the -st ending:

- Du arbeitest nachts. (You work at night)
- Arbeite nachts! (Work at night!)
- Du nimmst das Taxi. (You take the taxi.)
- Nimm das Taxi! (Take the taxi!)

You might have noticed that some common verbs have an extra umlaut in the 2nd/3rd person singular:

- *fahren*, du *fährst*
- *schlafen*, du *schläfst*

In the imperative, **these do not have an umlaut**:

- Du *fährst* mit dem Taxi.
- *Fahr* mit dem Taxi!

Ihr imperative

The second one is used to address more than one person informally. It uses the same conjugation as the regular *ihr* form of the present tense. This form of the imperative does not include a personal pronoun.

- *Ihr fahrt* nach Paris. (You go to Paris.)
- *Fahrt* nach Paris! (Go to Paris!)

Sie imperative

The third one is used to address one or more people formally. It uses the same conjugation as the regular *Sie* form of the present tense. The formal imperative is the only form to include the personal pronoun (*Sie*). Note that the word order is reversed. The verb always precedes the pronoun. It essentially looks like a question.

- *Sie lernen* Deutsch. (You learn German.)
- *Lernen Sie* Deutsch! (Learn German!)
- *Lernen Sie Deutsch?* (Do you learn German?)

Imperative for *sein*

The verb *sein* (to be) is highly irregular. It even has its own imperative version:

normal imperative

du bist **sei**

ihr seid **seid**

Sie sind **seien** Sie

The following sentences all mean "Please be quiet!":

- *Sei* bitte ruhig! (one friend)
- *Seid* bitte ruhig! (several friends)
- *Seien Sie* bitte ruhig! (some person in the cinema)

Nehmen, du nimmst??

As mentioned before, a small number of common verbs changes the vowel in the second + third person singular.

The change will normally be from *a* to *ä* or from *e* to *i(e)*.

	nehmen	geben	essen	lesen	lassen
ich	nehme	gebe	esse	lese	lasse
du	nimmst	gibst	isst	liest	lässt
er/sie/es	nimmt	gibt	isst	liest	lässt
wir	nehmen	geben	essen	lesen	lassen
ihr	nehmt	gebt	esst	lest	lasst
sie/Sie	nehmen	geben	essen	lesen	lassen

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Verbs-Imperative/tips-and-notes>>

OCCUPATIONS

Thursday, January 24, 2019 8:13 AM

Student or Schüler?

Ein Student is a university student and a **Schüler** is a pupil/student at a primary, secondary or high school. Students attending other types of schools such as language or dancing schools may also be called **Schüler**.

Dropping articles

When talking about your or someone else's profession in sentences such as *I'm a teacher* or *She's a judge*, German speakers **usually drop the indefinite article** (*ein/eine*).

- Ich bin Lehrer. (I am a teacher.)

It sounds more natural to say *Ich bin Lehrer* and *Sie ist Richterin* than *Ich bin ein Lehrer* and *Sie ist eine Richterin*. This rule also applies to students.

If you **add an adjective**, you **can't drop the article**. *Er ist ein schlechter Arzt* (He's a bad doctor) is correct, but *Er ist schlechter Arzt* is not.

Also note that **you can't drop the definite article**(*der/die/das*).

Male and female variants

The grammatical gender usually matches the biological sex of the person you're referring to.

So the word that refers to a male baker is grammatically masculine, and the word that refers to a female baker is grammatically feminine.

In the vast majority of cases, **the female variant is formed by simply adding the suffix -in to the male variant**, e.g. *der Bäcker* becomes *die Bäckerin* and *der Schüler* (the pupil) becomes *die Schülerin*.

The plural of the female variant is formed by adding the ending -innen to the singular of the male variant, e.g. *die Bäckerinnen* and *die Schülerinnen*.

Keep in mind that, in some cases, the plural comes with an umlauted stem vowel. This applies to the female variant as well.

	singular	plural
male	<i>der Koch</i>	<i>die Köche</i>

female die Köchin die Köchinnen

You learn one more word like this in this lesson:

- der Arzt, die Ärztin (the doctor)

Sie ist der Boss!

There are a few words for people where the grammatical and the natural gender differ. One of them is *der Boss*. There is no feminine version for it, although there are certainly female bosses.

- **Mein** Boss heißt Linda Ackermann.
- **Meine** Chefin heißt Linda Ackermann.

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Occupation-1/tips-and-notes>>

PREPOSITIONS I

Friday, February 1, 2019 8:35 AM

Prepositions

Accusative prepositions

Accusative prepositions **always** trigger the accusative case.

Here are the most common ones: **durch, für, gegen, ohne, um**

Dative prepositions

Dative prepositions **always** trigger the dative case.

Here are the most common ones: **aus, außer, bei, gegenüber, mit, nach, seit, von, zu**

Two-way prepositions

Two-way prepositions take the **dative case or the accusative case**, depending on the context.

This is an unusual, but central part of German grammar.

If there's **movement from one place to another**, use the **accusative case**.

- Die Katze geht *in die Küche*. (The cat walks into the kitchen.)

If there's **no movement**, or if there's **movement within a certain place**, use the **dative case**.

- Die Katze schläft *in der Küche*. (The cat sleeps in the kitchen.)
- Die Katze geht *in der Küche*. (The cat walks within the kitchen.)

These prepositions can switch case: **an, auf, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen**

When **not** to think about location change

Two-way prepositions are very common in everyday speech, so it's a good idea to practice them to fluency.

However, don't forget that **for some prepositions, you don't have to decide**:

Durch and *um* will always be accusative, although they might signify an activity without location change:

- Das Kind rennt *durch den Wald*. (The child is running through the forest.)

- Die Stühle stehen *um den* Tisch. (The chairs are standing around the table.)

Aus, von, zu will always be dative, although they might signify a location change.

- Er kommt *aus der* Küche (He comes out of the kitchen.)
- Ich fahre *zur* Arbeit. (I go to work.)
- Ich komme *von der* Arbeit. (I come from work.)

Other uses for two-way prepositions

Some verbs use one of these prepositions in a way that is *not about location*. This is part of language change, where things get repurposed all the time.

Über will always trigger the accusative case:

- Sie diskutieren *über den* Krieg. (They discuss the war.)

When used with these verbs, *vor* will always trigger the Dative:

- Er warnt *vor dem* Hund. (He warns about the dog.)

An, in and *auf* are more complicated: in some verbs, they trigger the accusative, in others the dative. You'll just have to memorize these.

- Er *denkt an seinen* Bruder. (He thinks of his brother.)
- Er *arbeitet an einem* Film (He's working on a film.)
- Ich *warte auf den* Bus. (I'm waiting for the bus.)
- Der Film *basiert auf meinem* Leben. (The film is based on my life.)

Contractions

Some prepositions and articles can be contracted.

an + das **ans**

an + dem am

auf + das aufs

bei + dem beim

in + das ins

in + dem im

hinter + das hinters

über + das übers

um + das ums

unter + das unders

von + dem vom

vor + das vors

zu + dem zum

zu + der Zur

- Wir gehen *ins* Kino (We go to the cinema.)

If you would use "that" in English, you would not use a contraction:

- In *das* Kino gehe ich nicht! (I won't go into *that* cinema!)

Preposition at the end of a sentence??

An important part of German grammar is that some verbs can split off their prefix. This often ends up at the end of a sentence. Some of these prefixes look exactly like a preposition.

So when you see a "preposition" at the end of a sentence, try to combine it with the verb. You might just have learned a new word :)

- Sie *macht* die Lampe *an*. (*anmachen* means "turn on" here)
- Ich *denke* *nach*. (*nachdenken* means "to think")
- *Pass* auf dich *auf*! (*aufpassen* means "to take care")
- Wann *fährt* der Zug *ab*? (*abfahren* means "to depart")
- Nimm deinen Hut *ab*! (*abnehmen* means "to take off" in this context)

Unfortunately, the way Duolingo is built does not allow to selectively teach German sentence structure. We hope this will change soon :)

Zu Hause vs. nach Hause

Zu Hause means *at home*, and *nach Hause* means *home(homewards, not at home)*. The -e at the end of *zu Hause* and *nach Hause* is an archaic dative ending, which is no longer used in modern German, but survives in certain fixed expressions.

- Ich bin *zu Hause*. (I am *at home*.)
- Ich gehe *nach Hause*. (I am walking *home*.)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Prepositions/tips-and-notes>>

PREPOSITIONS II

Wednesday, February 20, 2019 8:02 AM

Prepositions

<u>Summary Chart</u>	
<p><u>Diagnostic Exercises</u> (check if you've mastered this topic!) These exercises cover:</p> <ul style="list-style-type: none">• Prepositions• Strong Verb/Weak Verb Pairs (stehen/stellen etc.)• Prepositional Verbs• You will be asked 20 questions. IF YOU GET A QUESTION WRONG, KEEP TRYING UNTIL YOU GET IT RIGHT. THE PROGRAM WILL ONLY CALCULATE YOUR SCORE IF YOU HAVE ANSWERED ALL THE QUESTIONS. Incorrect guesses will reduce your score. When you are finished, click "Submit" if you are satisfied with your score. Remember you need a score of at least 80% in order to get a "check" for this assignment.	<u>Practice Exercises</u>
<u>Usage Notes: Two-Way Prepositions</u>	<u>Usage Notes: How to say where you are going (an, auf, in, nach, zu)</u>
<u>Usage Notes: How to say where you are (an, auf, bei, in, zu etc.)</u>	<u>Other Usage Notes and Examples</u>
<u>Strong Verb/Weak Verb Pairs (stehen/stellen etc.)</u> [Test questions on prepositions will often involve these verbs!]	<u>Prepositional Verbs</u>
<u>More Useful Prepositions (These will not be explicitly tested in 101-231, but are very good to know, especially for listening and reading!)</u>	

Summary Chart

Note: As in English, the meanings of the prepositions in German are quite flexible, and very important to know, since these little words come up all the time. As a result, it is difficult to give English equivalents for a list like this. The compromise used below is to give their primary meanings, and to write "etc." where other meanings occur particularly often. Try the second of the "Practice Exercises" on this page ([Wie sagt man...?](#)) in order to get a feel for how these prepositions can be used in various contexts.

Mnemonic advice: To remember the *accusative prepositions*, use the acronym "O Fudge" [ohne, für, um, durch, gegen], or ask your instructor about chanting "Durch-für-gegen-ohne-um, Deutsch zu lernen ist nicht dumm." For the *dative prepositions*, sing "Aus-über-bei-mit, nach-seit, von-zu" to the tune of the "Blue Danube" waltz, or think of the touching love poem "Roses are red, violets are blue, aus-über-bei-mit, nach-seit, von-zu." For the two-way prepositions, sing "An, auf, hin-ter, ne-ben, un-ter/Ü-ber, in, vor, zwi-schen" to the tune of the ["An die Freude" \["Ode to Joy"\] chorus from Beethoven's 9th symphony](#).

Contractions: common contractions of the prepositions with forms of der/das/die are included in the table below; where the contraction is in **bold** print, it is generally (though not always) preferable to the two-word form in speaking and writing; contractions not listed in bold print below are heard often in informal spoken German, but are less common

in writing. Other contractions (e.g. "neben + das = nebens") are possible, but only the more commonly used ones are listed below.

Accusative Prepositions Nouns and pronouns following these prepositions will always be in the Accusative	
bis	as far as, up to, until
durch (durch + das = durchs)	through, by means of, etc.
für (für + das = fürs)	for
gegen	against, etc.
ohne	without
um (um + das = ums)	around, at [time], etc.
Dative Prepositions Nouns and pronouns following these prepositions will always be in the Dative	
aus	out of
außer	except for, etc.
bei (bei + dem = beim)	at, etc.
gegenüber	opposite, across from; in relation to
mit	with
nach	to, after, according to
seit	[time only:] since, for
von (von + dem = vom)	from, etc.
zu (zu + dem = zum ; zu + der = zur)	to, etc.
Two-Way Prepositions Nouns and pronouns following these prepositions will either be in the Accusative (<==> Motion) or the Dative (<==> Location)--more details below	
an (an + das = ans ; an + dem = am)	at, to [vertical boundaries], etc.
auf (auf + das = aufs)	on, etc.
entlang	along
hinter (hinter + das = hinters ; hinter + dem = hinterm)	behind
in (in + das = ins ; in + dem = im)	in, to, into, etc.
neben	beside, besides
über (über + das = übers ; über + dem = überm)	over, above, about [topic], etc.
unter (unter + das = unters ; unter + dem = unterm)	under, among,

	etc.
<u>vor</u> (vor + das = vors; vor + dem = vorm)	in front of, ago , etc.
zwischen	between
Genitive Prepositions	
<i>Nouns and pronouns following these prepositions will generally be in the Genitive in more formal speaking and writing, but are increasingly often in the Dative in less formal speaking and writing.</i>	
(an)statt	instead of
trotz	despite
während	during
<u>wegen</u>	because of
außer-/inner-/ober-/unterhalb [must use Genitive with these: cannot use Dative]	outside of/inside of/above/below
diesseits/jenseits/beiderseits [must use Genitive with these: cannot use Dative]	on this/the other/both side(s) of

Übungen

- [Accusative, Dative, Two-Way or Genitive?](#) This exercise just asks you to choose the appropriate case for each preposition.
- [Wie sagt man...?](#) This exercise will help you practice the range of meanings of the prepositions.
- [Motion or Location?](#) This exercise will help you decide whether sentences involving [two-way prepositions](#) describe motion or the location of the action.
- [Wo/Wohin?](#) Practice choosing the right preposition to say where you are and where you're going, and also practice using the appropriate cases with these prepositions.
- [Die Katze und die Maus](#) Practice deciding whether to use dative or accusative with the two-way prepositions in this story about the value of knowing a foreign language :) Note that there are a number of "trick questions" in this exercise to make it more realistic: some of the questions involve dative prepositions or accusative prepositions, for whom the motion/location distinction is irrelevant, and a couple of them involve [prepositional verbs and adjectives](#).
- [Filmtitel mit Präpositionen](#) A translation exercise (first half German-English, second half English-German) involving prepositions. We normally encourage you to think in German and avoid trying to translate literally from the English, but playing with movie titles is fun, so here's an exception.
- [Liedtexte](#) [Song Lyrics] Another translation exercise involving prepositions. And for fun, click on "weiter" at the top after you finish this exercise to see if you can figure out who sang these songs :) Again, we normally encourage you to think in German and avoid trying to translate literally from the English, but playing with song lyrics is fun--especially because of how silly the literal translations often sound :)
- [Nach fünf im Urwald](#) This exercise is excellent cumulative practice if you've seen this movie. If you're a University of Michigan student, you will see this movie in German 221/231, or you can watch it in the [Language Resource Center](#). It's always very popular at our 221/231 movie screenings, so you'll probably enjoy it :)

For more practice, please refer to the exercises on prepositions on the "[Case Overview](#)" page!

Exercises involving [Strong Verb/Weak Verb Pairs](#) (stehen/stellen etc.)

- [Das chaotische Zimmer](#) This is a series of four exercises designed to help you figure out which verb to use, practice the forms of the verbs, figure out which cases to use with the nouns, and finally put together sentences using these verbs. Please use the "weiter" button to navigate between these four exercises.

Exercises involving prepositional verbs and adjectives.

- [Was bedeutet...?](#) Match the prepositional verbs with their English equivalents.
- [Welche Präposition?](#) Match the statements with the appropriate preposition.
- [Lola und die Präpositionen](#) If you've seen *Lola rennt* (*Run Lola Run*), try this to practice prepositions and prepositional verbs.
- [Die große Liebe](#) Practice prepositional adjectives by first matching the prepositional adjectives with their English equivalents, and then choosing the correct prepositions to complete a series of romantic statements.

Übungen auf anderen Webseiten

- [Preposition jamboree \(acc. only, dat. only, AC-DC\)](#)
- [Preposition Quiz](#) (about.com)
- [Reflexivverben mit Präpositionalobjekten](#) Wir haben reflexive Verben noch nicht wiederholt, also [=thus] ist das eine Vorschau [=preview]. Wissen Sie, welche Präpositionen bei diese reflexiven Verben passen?

[Zurück nach oben](#)

Usage Notes: Two-Way Prepositions

- nouns following the **two-way prepositions** (*in, auf, unter, über, vor, hinter, neben, zwischen, an, entlang...*) are
 - **accusative:** **MOTION**--if the verb is describing a **change of location**: where someone or something is **going** or **being put**.
 - **dative:** **LOCATION**--if the verb is describing **where** something is located or **where** an action is taking place
 - this can be summarized by the nonsense mnemonic:
"Accusative-Cruisative; Dative-Stative"
- Remember **the above rule applies ONLY to the two-way prepositions**. Nouns following dative prepositions will be dative even if motion is involved (e.g. "Sie geht **zum** [=zu dem] Arzt" and "Ich komme **von der** Ärztin!"), and nouns following accusative prepositions will be accusative even if no motion is involved ("Ich singe ein Lied **für dich**").
- When two-way prepositions are used in combination with prepositional verbs, they lose their spatial meaning, and so the motion/location distinction no longer makes sense. Instead, you need to learn individually for each prepositional verb whether it is followed by nouns or pronouns in the accusative or in the dative. [Refer to the page on prepositional verbs for more information](#).
 - [Some **VERY** rough guidelines for prepositional verbs with 2-way prepositions: (1) When **über** means "about," it is followed by the Accusative: wir sprechen/schreiben/lachen **über dich**; (2) if in doubt, use the **Accusative** with these; (3) the most important of the many exceptions to (2): **Angst haben vor, arbeiten an, and warnen vor** are all used with the **Dative**]

Here are some examples, with explanations for the choice of case:

Die Studenten sitzen in der Klasse.	Location (where are the students sitting? In the class) ==> Dative .
Die Studenten gehen in die Klasse.	Motion (where are the students going? Into the class) ==> Accusative .
Wir essen in der Mensa.	Location (where are we eating? In the cafeteria) ==> Dative .
Wir essen in die Mensa.	Using the accusative would imply that we are eating our way into the cafeteria, as if there were e.g. a huge wall of Sauerbraten blocking our way into the cafeteria (though you would actually have to say "Wir essen uns in die Mensa durch ."
Der Terminator	Motion (The Terminator is coming to my door)

kommt mit einem Maschinengewehr an meine Tür.	==> Accusative .
Der Terminator steht mit einem Maschinengewehr an meiner Tür.	Location (The Terminator is standing at my door) ==> Dative .
Google sieht in unsere Herzen.	Google (which is all-knowing) sees into our hearts ==> accusative .
Google sieht in unseren Herzen.	Using the dative in this case would imply that Google is located inside our hearts (and there it is seeing some things), which we can only hope doesn't make sense.
Google sieht die Liebe in unseren Herzen.	Here the dative is appropriate: Google is seeing the love located in our hearts.
Ein Französischbuch liegt auf meinem Schreibtisch.	A French book is lying on my desk ==> location ==> dative . Click here for more information on strong verb/weak verb pairs like stehen/stellen, liegen/legen, sitzen/setzen etc., which are frequently used with two-way prepositions.
Ich lege es in den Kamin [=fireplace].	I put it into the fireplace ==> motion ==> accusative . Click here for more information on strong verb/weak verb pairs like stehen/stellen, liegen/legen, sitzen/setzen etc., which are frequently used with two-way prepositions.
Das Kind springt auf das Bett.	The accusative "das Bett" means there must be motion towards or away from the bed ==> the child is jumping onto the bed.
Das Kind springt auf dem Bett.	The dative "dem Bett" means the action is located on the bed ==> the child is jumping up and down on the bed. Note that in this case there <i>is</i> motion involved, but since it is not motion towards or away from the bed, the dative is used.
Justin Bieber rennt vor das rasende [=speeding] Auto.	The accusative "das ... Auto" means the action is taking JB in front of the speeding car, i.e. there is a speeding car, and JB is running out in front of it into its way ==> bad news for JB and the Beliebers.
Justin Bieber rennt vor dem rasenden [=speeding] Auto.	The dative "dem ... Auto" means the action is located in front of the speeding car, i.e. there is a speeding car, and JB is running along in front of it ==> if he is running fast enough, he will survive.
Ich schwimme im Meer.	By using the dative I am emphasizing the location where my swimming is taking place: in the sea.
Ich schwimme ins Meer.	By using the accusative I am emphasizing where I am swimming to : (out) into the sea.

[Zurück nach oben](#)

Wohin gehen wir?--Where are we going to?: an, auf, in, nach, zu

1. Continents, islands, countries, cities and towns:

a. Normally, use **nach** for these.

Wir reisen **nach** Europa, **nach** Tahiti, **nach** Deutschland, **nach** Köln

b. For **countries with an article**, use **in**.

Wir reisen **in** die Schweiz, **in** die USA, **in** den Irak, **in** die Türkei [Also: **in**die Stadt]

2. Other locations:

- a. Use **in** if you will end up **inside** a place or location.

Du gehst **ins** Kino, **in** die Klasse, **in** die Kirche, **in** den Zoo, **in** die Sauna, **in** den Park, **in** die Stadt

- b. Use **auf** if you will end up **on** something.

Ich gehe **auf** die Straße, du kletterst [=climb] **auf** den Berg, die Kuh geht **auf** die Weide [=meadow], das Kind geht **auf** die Toilette, wir fahren **aufs** Land [=countryside]

Auf is also sometimes used for going to **formal events** or **public places**.

Sie geht **auf** eine Party, **auf** eine Hochzeit [=wedding], **auf** einen Empfang [=reception], **auf** die Post, **auf** den Markt [but usually: **zum**Rathaus [=town hall], **zur** Universität, **zur** Bibliothek]

- c. Use **an** to describe motion **to a precise spot**, or to something that can be perceived as **a horizontal or vertical boundary** (something you would stand *at* or *by* in English).

Precise spot: Er geht **ans** Mikrofon, **an** den Tatort [=scene of the crime], **an** die Bushaltestelle [=bus stop], **an** seinen Platz, **an** die Kreuzung [=intersection], **an** die Kasse [=cashier's desk]

Horizontal or vertical boundary: Sie geht **ans** Fenster, **an** die Tür, **an** die Wand, **an** den Tisch ["Sie setzt sich **an** den Tisch"], **an** die Grenze [=border], **ans** Meer, **an** die Tafel, **an** den Fluss, **an** den Rhein, **an** den Strand [=beach], **an** den See, **an** den Zaun [=fence], **ans** Ufer [=shore], **an** die Front [in war]

- d. Use **nach** for directions (without an article), and idiomatically in **nach Hause**. Note: this, and the use of **nach** for going to cities, countries etc. described above, are the *only*uses of **nach** [to mean **to**]. Learners of German often use **nach** when they are not sure which preposition is correct, but **zu** is a much better guess--see (e) below!

Fahren

Sie **nach** links, **nach** rechts, **nach** Norden, **nach** Süden, **nach**Osten, **nach** Westen.
Gehen Sie **nach** oben, **nach** unten. Ich gehe **nach Hause**.

- e. **If in doubt, use zu!** **Zu** can replace **in** if you need not emphasize that you are going inside, and *must* replace **in** if it would be absurd to speak of going inside--e.g. driving to a building, visiting a person. You also need to use **zu** if you're going to a particular company's locale that you're specifying with a proper name (e.g. Kroger). An exception to this latter rule is the huge department store chain "Kaufhof," the reason being that the name contains the word "Hof" [=yard], a space that one can go into.

Wir gehen **zum/in den** Bahnhof; wir fahren **zum/in den** Bahnhof; wir fahren **zur/in die** Stadt; die Straßenbahn [=tram] fährt **zum/ins**Museum; wir gehen **zu/in** Peter; wir gehen **zur/in die** Bäckerei; wir gehen **zum/in den** Bäcker; **zu/in** SPAR (a supermarket chain), **zum/in den** Kaufhof

Zu can also replace the use of **auf** for formal events and public buildings, and it can replace the use of **an** generally. Thus, you can usually get by just by knowing **zu**, the use of **nach** and **in** for countries, cities etc. (and of **nach** for directions), and the use of **auf** for

Straße, Land, Toilette etc.!

Replacing auf: Sie geht **zu** einer Party, **zu** einer Hochzeit [=wedding], **zueinem Empfang** [=reception], **zum** Bahnhof, **zur** Post

Replacing an for precise spots: Er geht **zum** Mikrofon, **zum** Tatort [=scene of the crime], **zur** Bushaltestelle [=bus stop], **zu** seinen Platz

Replacing an for horizontal boundaries: Sie geht **zum** Fenster, **zur** Tür, **zur** Wand, **zum** Tisch [but: sie setzt sich **an** den/**zum** Tisch], **zur** Grenze [=border]

[Zurück nach oben](#)

Wo sind wir?: an, auf, bei, in, zu etc.

1. Use **in**, **auf** and **an** in the same ways as described under [Wohin gehen wir?](#) above; for exceptions, see (2) below.

Du bist **im** Kino, **in** der Klasse, **in** der Kirche, **im** Zoo, **in** der Sauna, **im** Park, **in** der Stadt

Ich bin **auf** der Straße, **auf** dem Berg, **auf** dem Land; die Kuh ist **auf** der Weide [=meadow]; das Kind ist **auf** der Toilette

Sie ist **auf** einer Party, **auf** einer Hochzeit [=wedding], **auf** einem Empfang [=reception], **auf** der Post, **auf** dem Markt

Er ist **am** Mikrofon, **am** Tatort [=scene of the crime], **an** der Bushaltestelle [=bus stop], **an** seinem Platz, **an** der Kreuzung

Sie ist **am** Fenster, **an** der Tür, **an** der Wand, **am** Tisch ["Sie sitzt **am** Tisch"], **an** der Grenze [=border], **am** Meer

2a. **Nach** is **NEVER** used for saying where you are. Use **in** for location in continents, countries with or without article, and cities. Use **auf** for location on an **island**.

Wir sind **in** Europa, **auf** Tahiti, **in** Deutschland, **in** Köln, **auf** Helgoland [an island off Germany's northern coast]

2b. For location **in** public buildings, **in** (and occasionally **an**) is increasingly used instead of **auf**, especially in speaking.

Wir sind **in** der Post, **im** Rathaus [=town hall], **in** der Bibliothek [but usually: **am** Bahnhof, **an** der Universität]

2c. **An** is used quite generally to indicate location **at** or **near** a place; **bei** can also be used and is more like "**in the vicinity of**."

Sie ist **am/beim** Bahnhof, **am/beim** Supermarkt, **an** der/**bei** der Bibliothek, **am/beim** Theater

2d. **Bei** is used to indicate location **in** or **at** a **particular person's or company's house/locale**; it is also used to indicate one's **place of work**. If one is working or studying at an **academic** or otherwise "high-brow" institution, one uses **an**.

Wir sind **bei** Hans, wir wohnen **bei** Inge, ich bin **beim** Aldi [name of a discount supermarket chain], er ist **beim** Metzger [=butcher], du arbeitest **bei** Siemens/**bei** der Post/**bei** Hoechst, sie studiert/lehrt/arbeitet **an** der Universität

e. **Zu** does **not** usually indicate location, but it used to. The most important remnant is **zu Hause**, and there are others, such as "zu Tisch" [=at table].

[Zurück nach oben](#)

Other Notes and Examples

1. You should be familiar with the various common meanings of these prepositions. Although some aspects of these meanings are reviewed here, you may want to look back at your textbooks/notes from previous German courses to refresh your memory. It's worth it: prepositions come up all the time, and are crucial in determining meaning! You can find more info on some of these prepositions in the "[Superwörter](#)" pages: **um** and **nach** in [SW I](#); **während** and **bei** in [SW II](#); **zu** in [SW III](#); and **unter** and **neben** in [SW V](#). Below are a few more reminders.

2. **Für** = **for** generally, but to say **for how long** something happens, German distinguishes three cases:

2a. **The action is completed.** Just put the **time period in the accusative**. Add **lang**, if you wish. Do **NOT** use **für**.

Wir waren drei Wochen/einen Tag/zwei Jahre/eine Stunde (lang) in Berlin.

2b. **The action began in the past and is continuing.**

Use **seit + present tense**. Do **NOT** use **für**.

Wir sind **seit** drei Wochen/einem Tag/zwei Jahren/einer Stunde in Berlin.

We have been (and still are) in Berlin for three weeks/one day/two years/one hour.

2c. **The action extends into the future.** Use **für ONLY** in this case.

Wir sind **für** drei Wochen/einen Tag/zwei Jahre/eine Stunde in Berlin.

We are in Berlin for three weeks/one day/two years/one hour. [We are there already, and this is how long we expect to stay]

Wir werden **für** drei Wochen/einen Tag/zwei Jahre/eine Stunde nach Berlin reisen.

We are going to travel to Berlin for three weeks/one day/two years/one hour. [This is how long we are planning to stay]

3. Always use **ohne** for **without/with no**, never **mit kein**.

Da ist ein Huhn **ohne** Kopf! There's a chicken **with no** head!

4. **Aus = out of.** This basic meaning can be extended to describe **where one comes from**(as in one's home or birthplace, **what something is made of**, and occasionally a **motive**for doing something.. To say **where one has just been**, **von** is used. **Von** is also used to say what **planet** someone is from, and to indicate the **author** of a book or the **creator** of a work of art:

Snoopy weigert sich, **aus** seiner Hundehütte zu kommen.

Snoopy refuses to come **out of** his dog house.

Er isst nicht mehr **aus** seiner Schüssel.

He no longer eats **out of** his bowl.

Snoopy kommt **vom** Mars, nicht **aus** Connecticut.

Snoopy comes **from** Mars, not **from** Connecticut.

Charlie Brown kommt **von** London, um zu helfen.

Charlie Brown comes **from** London in order to help.

Er gibt Snoopy einen Mantel **aus**Katzenfell.

He gives Snoopy a coat **made out of** cat fur.

Snoopy fängt aus Freude an zu tanzen.	Snoopy begins to dance for [out of] joy.
Die <i>Peanuts</i> Comics sind von Charles Schulz.	The <i>Peanuts</i> cartoons are by Charles Schulz.
	Look him in the eyes! Your Schnitzel originates from this animal!

5. **Wegen** = **because of**. Unlike **weil**, **da**, and **denn**, **wegen** is a **preposition**, not a **conjunction**. Like **because of**, it is followed by a noun or pronoun (in the genitive, since it's a genitive preposition) that gives the reason, not by a whole clause (with a verb) that gives the reason. In speaking, it is often used with the dative instead of the genitive.

Wegen der Explosion meines Computers konnte ich meine Hausaufgaben nicht machen.	Because of the explosion of my computer , I couldn't do my homework. [Wegen ==> the reason given is a noun phrase: the explosion of my computer]
Weil/da mein Computer explodiert ist , konnte ich meine Hausaufgaben nicht machen.	Because my computer exploded , I couldn't do my homework. [Weil/da ==> the reason given is a whole clause with a verb: my computer exploded]
Wegen des schlechten Wetters/dem schlechten Wetersitzen wir zu Hause und spielen <i>Moorhuhnjagd</i> [=formerly very popular goofy video game in which you hunt some dumb chickens].	Because of the bad weather , we are sitting at home and playing <i>Moorhuhnjagd</i> . [Wegen ==> the reason given is a noun phrase: the bad weather]
Weil/da das Wetter schlecht ist , sitzen wir zu Hause und spielen <i>Moorhuhnjagd</i> [=formerly very popular goofy video game in which you hunt some dumb chickens].	Because the weather is bad , we are sitting at home and playing <i>Moorhuhnjagd</i> . [Weil/da ==> the reason given is a whole clause with a verb: the weather is bad]

6a. Similarly, **vor** and **nach** are **prepositions**, not to be confused with the corresponding **conjunctions bevor** and **nachdem** ==> **vor** and **nach** need to be followed by a **noun or pronoun**, whereas **bevor** and **nachdem** need to be followed by a **whole clause that includes a verb**. [See "["Wohin gehen wir?"](#) above for other uses of **nach**.]

Die Deutschstudenten sind vor der Klasse ganz aufgeregt. Die Deutschstudenten sind bevorder Klasse ganz aufgeregt.	The German students are totally excited before class.
Die Französischstudenten	The French students run away screaming before class begins.

rennen schreiend weg, bevor die Klasse beginnt. Die Französischstudenten rennen schreiend weg, vor die Klasse beginnt.	
Nach der Wiedervereinigung gab es in Deutschland viele unerwartete wirtschaftliche und soziale Probleme.	After reunification there were many unexpected economic and social problems in Germany.
Beethoven schrieb seine neunte Sinfonie, nachdem er taub geworden war.	Beethoven wrote his ninth symphony after he had become deaf.
Hochmut [=arrogance] kommt vordem Fall. Hochmut [=arrogance] kommt bevor dem Fall.	German counterpart of the English expression "Pride comes before a fall."
Nach dem Essen sollst du ruhn, oder tausend Schritte tun. Nachdem dem Essen sollst du ruhn, oder tausend Schritte tun.	Literally, this means: " After the meal you should rest, or do 1000 steps." ==> After meals, take a nap or go for a walk.
Nach mir die Sintflut. Nachdem mir die Sintflut.	Literally, this means: " After me, the flood." This is a famous quote (Après moi/nous le déluge), variously attributed to Louis XV or his mistress, Madame de Pompadour, used idiomatically in German when someone deals with a situation in such a way that it will be OK for him/her, but there is likely to be chaos for people to deal with later.

6b. When it **precedes** a time expression, **vor** means **ago**:

"Wann fährt der Zug nach Hamburg?" -- "Sie haben ihn gerade verpasst. Er ist vor zwei Minuten abgefahren. Der nächste Zug fährt morgen früh um 6:27."	"When does the train to Hamburg leave?" -- "You just missed it. It left two minutes ago . The next train leaves tomorrow at 6:27."
"Wann bist du aufgestanden?" -- " Vor fünf Minuten."	"When did you get up?" -- "Five minutes ago ."
Vor 87 Jahren brachten unsere Väter auf diesem Kontinent eine neue Nation hervor...	Four score and seven years ago , our fathers brought forth upon this continent a new nation...

7. When **über** means "**about**" (as opposed to "**over**" or "**above**"), it is **always** used with the **accusative**:

Eminem denkt, dass die Leute immer über ihn sprechen.	Eminem thinks that people are always talking about him.
Vom History Channel kann man viel über	One can learn a lot about the 2nd World War

den 2. Weltkrieg lernen.

from the History Channel.

8. Nouns and pronouns following the most common enitive prepositions (**an**) **statt**, **trotz**, **während** and **wegen** will generally be in the **Genitive** in more **formal** speaking and writing, **but** are increasingly often in the **Dative** in more **informal** speaking and writing.

<p>Wegen des Föhns/dem Föhn waren alle schlecht gelaunt. [Föhn] is a notorious weather phenomenon north and south of the Alps, a warm, dry wind coming off the Alps especially in Spring and late Winter that gives people headaches and puts them in a bad mood. Meteorologically it is comparable to the Chinook in the Rockies.]</p> <p>Während des Endspiels/dem Endspiel der Fußballweltmeisterschaft waren die Straßen leer gefegt.</p>	<p>Because of the Foehn wind, everyone was in a bad mood.</p> <p>During the final of the soccer world cup the streets were deserted [wie leer gefegt = as if they had been swept empty].</p>
<p>Trotz des Endes/dem Ende der Rezession stieg die Arbeitslosigkeit.</p>	<p>Despite the end of the recession, unemployment increased.</p>

9a. The **dative** preposition **gegenüber** can **precede** or **follow** the noun it refers to. When **gegenüber** is used with a **pronoun**, it must **follow** the pronoun. You should put the **accusative** preposition **entlang** **after** the noun it refers to. You may occasionally see it used **before** the noun, in which case it actually becomes a **dative** (or occasionally **genitive**) preposition.

<p>Das Panorama-Restaurant Loreley am Rhein liegt direkt gegenüber dem Loreleyfelsen. Das Panorama-Restaurant Loreley am Rhein liegt dem Loreleyfelsen direkt gegenüber.</p> <p>Wenn Sie am Fenster sitzen und essen, ist die Loreley Ihnen direkt gegenüber. Wenn Sie am Fenster sitzen und essen, ist die Loreley direkt gegenüber Ihnen.</p> <p>Wenn man im Schiff den Rhein entlang fährt, sieht man viele romantische alte Burgen, und die sagenumwobene Loreley. [rare:] Wenn man im Schiff entlang dem Rhein/des Rheins fährt, sieht man viele romantische alte Burgen, und die sagenumwobene Loreley.</p>	<p>The Panorama-Restaurant Loreley am Rhein lies directly across from (opposite) the Loreley rock.</p> <p>If you sit at the window and eat, the Loreley is directly across from (opposite) you.</p> <p>If one rides along the Rhine by boat, one sees many romantic old castles, and the legendary Loreley.</p>
---	--

9b. **Gegenüber** can also be used to mean **in relation to** as in the following examples:

<p>Die Deutschen stehen Multimediahandys skeptisch gegenüber.</p> <p>Die Organisatoren des Robo-Cup wollen die Scheu gegenüber Robotern abbauen. [This is a]</p>	<p>The Germans are skeptical about multimedia cell phones. [literally: The Germans stand skeptically in relation to multimedia cell phones]</p> <p>The organizers of the Robo-Cup want to reduce the apprehensiveness</p>
--	---

competition in which robots play soccer. Click here for the RoboCup German Open .]	[people feel] in relation to robots.
Warum bist du mir gegenüber immer so aggressiv? Warum bist du gegenüber mir immer so aggressiv?	Why are you always so aggressive towards me?

[Zurück nach oben](#)

From <<https://www.lsa.umich.edu/german/hmr/Grammatik/Praepositionen/Prepositions.html>>

TIME-MANNER-PLACE

Sunday, February 24, 2019 2:37 PM

The time, manner, place rule - TMP

When several **adverbs** are used in the same sentence in German, the sentence becomes more complex and they must appear in this strict order:

1. Time - When, how often	2. Manner - How, who you were with	3. Place - Where, where to
---------------------------------	--	----------------------------------

German sentences will often seem a bit different from how we would say things in English. In English, for example, we tend to put the place before the time, but in German the time always goes before the place.

Look at the following English sentences:

- I go to school by bus at 08:00.
- I play with my dog in the park every day.

Now look at the difference in word order when the sentences are translated to German. You can see how they follow the time, manner, place (TMP) rule.

1. Time	2. Manner	3. Place
Ich fahre	um acht Uhr	mit dem Bus
Ich spiele	jeden Tag	im Park.

If there are two adverbial phrases from the same group in a sentence, they follow the same order as in English, eg:

zweimal – twice

die Woche – week

so:

zweimal die Woche - twice a week

jeden Tag um acht Uhr – every day at 08:00

The verb (main or auxiliary) is still the second idea.

Past participles and infinitives go to the end.

- **Wir werden am Dienstag (1) schnell (2) in die Stadt (3) gehen.** - We'll quickly go into town on Tuesday.
- **Sie kann immer (1) sehr gut (2) singen.** - She can always sing well. (No adverb of place in this sentence).
- **Ich lese jeden Tag (1) eine halbe Stunde (2) im Bett.** (3) - I read in bed for half an hour every day. (No adverb of manner).

Question

Can you identify the time, manner and place phrases in these sentences?

- **Wir sehen abends nicht gern Horrorfilme.**
- **Ich war meistens samstags mit Freunden im Einkaufszentrum.**
- **Du kannst morgen hoffentlich bei mir übernachten.**
- **Sie sind letztes Jahr mit uns nach Irland gefahren.**

- **Wir sehen abends nicht gern Horrorfilme.** - We don't like watching horror films in the evening. (Literally: We don't watch horror films gladly).

Time	Manner	Place
abends	nicht gern	no place

- **Ich war meistens samstags mit Freunden im Einkaufszentrum.**
- I was usually in the shopping centre with my friends on Saturdays.

Time	Manner	Place
meistens/samstags	mit Freunden	im Einkaufszentrum

- **Du kannst morgen hoffentlich bei mir übernachten.** - You can sleep round at my house tomorrow, hopefully.

Time	Manner	Place
morgen	hoffentlich	bei mir

- **Sie sind letztes Jahr mit uns nach Irland gefahren.** - They went to Ireland with us last year.

Time	Manner	Place
letztes Jahr	mit uns	nach Irland

Question

Place the TMP adverbs in the right place in the sentence.

- Ich frühstücke draußen. (mit meiner Familie; manchmal)
- Sie wird als Sprachassistentin arbeiten. (in Graz; nächstes Jahr)
- Wir spielen Doppelkopf. (einmal im Monat; mit Freunden; normalerweise)
- Er kann nicht kommen. (zur Arbeit; heute; leider)

- Ich frühstücke manchmal mit meiner Familie draußen. - I sometimes have breakfast outside with my family.

Time	Manner	Place
manchmal	mit meiner Familie	draußen

- Sie wird nächstes Jahr als Sprachassistentin in Graz arbeiten.

- She will work as a foreign language assistant in Graz next year.

Time	Manner	Place
nächstes Jahr	als Sprachassistentin	in Graz

- Wir spielen normalerweise einmal im Monat mit Freunden Doppelkopf.

- We usually play Doppelkopf once a month with friends.

Time	Manner	Place
normalerweise	mit Freunden	none

- Er kann heute leider nicht zur Arbeit kommen. -

Unfortunately, he can't come to work today.

Time	Manner	Place
heute	leider	zur Arbeit

COMMON IDIOMS

Monday, February 25, 2019 5:57 AM

Posted on Reddit by:

[u/Doppelkammertoaster](#)

"After sharing my document for 'lassen' here the new one for some German idioms. This list is of course heavily curated. I tried to find a balance between interesting, practical and common idioms I hear and use. It was very entertaining to compose the file and I hope it will entertain you guys too!

The pdf can be downloaded at:

https://www.mediafire.com/file/hsdwkb7u1ohemh2/German_16_-_Common_Idioms.pdf/file

Let me know if you find mistakes, errors or have feedback, additions or ideas how to improve it! Happy learning!"

From <https://www.reddit.com/r/German/comments/aq8rl0/list_of_german_idioms/>

de GERMAN 16

Common Idioms

0-A

08/15 (Null-acht-fünfzehn/fuffzehn) - *Das ist ein 08/15 Film.*

- Something is common, not fancy and average.

A und O - *Das ist das A und O.*

- The most important part of something.

Abklappern - *Ich muss alles abklappern.*

- To have to search everywhere, to have to go to places.

Abschminken - *Das kann ich mir abschminken (always reflexive)*

- To know that something can't be done.

Vom Acker machen - *Ich mach mich vom Acker.*

- To leave a place.

In den sauren Apfel beißen - *Du musst in den sauren Apfel beißen und zuhause bleiben.*

- To have to accept that something unpleasant has to be done.

Der Apfel fällt nicht weit vom Stamm

- To be similar to one's parents. Said after one does something similar as their parents would have done it.

Armutszeugnis - *Das ist echt ein Armutszeugnis. (refering to the deed)*

- To say one has been proven to be of bad character due an action done.

Mit Argusaugen bewachen - *Sie bewacht ihre Bücher mit Argusaugen.*

- To keep a very close eye on something.

Sich den Arsch aufreißen - *Sie bewacht ihre Bücher mit Argusaugen.*

- To do your best to achieve something.

Am Arsch der Welt - *Das liegt doch am Arsch der Welt.*

- A place that is remote, far away and usually not well connected.

Mit dem Arsch auf Grundeis gehen - *Da geht mir aber der Arsch auf Grundeis.*

- To be really afraid.

Arschkarte haben - *Er hat voll die Arschkarte gezogen.*

- To draw the shortest stick.

Asche auf mein/dein Haupt!

- To be sorry for something, usually ironic.

Das Auge des Gesetzes

- The police.

Asche auf mein/dein Haupt:

- To be sorry for something, usually ironic.

Das Auge des Gesetzes

- The police.

Etwas ausbaden müssen - *Jetzt muss ich das ausbaden.*

- For needing to endure the aftermath of something bad and feeling being the wrong recipient for it.

B**Nur Bahnhof verstehen** - *Ich verstehe nur Bahnhof!*

- To not understand the explanation about a topic or problem.

Am Ball bleiben - *Du musst da am Ball bleiben, sonst wird das nie was!*

- To keep pursuing something.

Den Ball flach halten - *Du solltest den Ball flach halten.*

- To hold one's fire/horses.

Auf die lange Bank schieben - *Er schiebt seine Abschlussarbeit auf die lange Bank.*

- To keep putting something off.

Dort steppt/tanzt der Bär/ Dort boxt der Papst im Kettenhemd - *Alter, in dem Club tanzt aber der Bär.*

- Describing a place where a lot is happening, usually a party.

Jemanden einen Bären aufbinden - *Er bindet dir nur einen Bären auf.*

- To kid someone.

Ich bin bedient/Die Schnauze voll haben - *Ich hab' die Schnauze voll.*

- To have enough of something or someone.

Über den/dem Berg sein/ Das schlimmste überstanden haben - Thomas ist über den Berg.

- To describe that someone has passed the worst part behind them.

Einen Besen fressen - Wenn das klappt, dann fress ich einen Besen.

- That not expect that something is happening, very unlikely.

Kein Blatt vor den Mund nehmen - Tom nimmt kein Blatt vorm' [vor dem] Mund.

- To be outspoken, to not mince matters.

Das Blatt wenden - So wendet sich das Blatt!

- To turn the tide.

Blau machen - Ich mache heute blau.

- To not go to work or stating to relax for day where one should or would have to work.

Blau/breit/dicht sein - Er ist so blau/dicht!

- To be wasted.

Ein Blindes Huhn findet auch mal ein Korn

- Stating success with things one is usually very bad in.

Den Bogen überspannen - Jetzt überspannst du aber den Bogen.

- To describe that one exaggerates something.

Den Braten riechen - Ich kann den Braten von hier riechen.

- To be aware that something fishy is going on.

Rutsch mir doch den Buckel runter!

- To close the discussion with someone one has enough of.

Alles in Butter - Es ist alles in Butter.

- Stating that everything is alright.

Jemandem etwas aufs Butterbrot schmieren - Das musst du mir aber nicht so auf's Brot/Butterbrot schmieren.

- To be blunt with someone on public, to give someone one's piece of mind

C

Die Chemie stimmt - Die Chemie passt/stimmt zwischen uns.

- To have good chemistry with someone.

D

Einen Dachschaden haben/nicht alle Latten am Zaun haben/einen an der Waffel haben/ Ein Rad ab haben.

- To have a screw loose.

Ein Dauerbrenner - Das ist ein Dauerbrenner

- Something that is always popular

Unter einer Decke stecken - Thomas und Matthias stecken unter einer Decke.

- People who have planned something in secret together.

E

Eier in der Hose haben - Er hat Eier in der Hose!

- Describes someone who did something brave.

Ein Dauerbrenner - Das ist ein Dauerbrenner

- Something that is always popular

Es ist im Eimer - Der Fahrstuhl ist im Eimer.

- Something is broken

Wie ein Elefant im Porzellanladen - Er benimmt sich wie ein Elefant im Porzellanladen.

- Someone who is acting up and possibly can destroy things.

Eine Eselsbrücke bauen - Sie baut sich eine Eselsbrücke.

- To build a mental bridge/association to remember something better.

Eulen nach Athen tragen - Ach jetzt trag mal keine Eulen nach Athen.

- To describe an act that is useless.

F

Den Faden verlieren - Ich habe den Faden verloren.

- To lose the train of thought.

Das passt wie die Faust aufs Auge

- Describes two things that fit perfectly to each other.

G

Nicht das Gelbe vom Eis sein - Das ist nicht das Gelbe vom Ei.

- Stating that something is not as good as expected.

Ins Gras beißen/ über den Jordan gehen/abnippeln/krepieren/den Löffel abgeben/das zeitliche Segnen

- To die

Wer im Glashaus sitzt sollte nicht mit Steinen schmeissen

- Used in an argument or fight to address criticism of someone who can be criticized for the same.

Auf Granit beißen

- Expresses that it is futile to change the opinion of someone else.

Wer anderen eine Grube gräbt fällt selbst hinein/

- Describes the likelihood of someone hurting themselves by trying to hurt someone else.

H

Etwas an den Haaren herbeiziehen - Das zieht sie sich an den Haaren herbei.

- To imagine something from thin air that might not be true.

Etwas in den falschen Hals bekommen - Das hat er in den falschen Hals bekommen.

- Describes that someone had understood something personal wrong and is upset about it

Es zieht wie Hechtsuppe

- Describes the air draft when sitting in it.

Hummeln im Hinter haben - Er hat Hummeln im Hintern.

- Describes someone who works much or can't sit still.

Auf dem Holzweg sein - Da ist er aber auf dem Holzweg.

- To say that someone is in error.

Die Hühner satteln - Freya, komm wir satteln die Hühner.

- Joking, instead of saddling the horses. To set off/to leave.

Da wird der Hund in der Pfanne verrückt

- Phrase of surprise about something unbelievable.

I

Im wahrsten Sinne des Wortes

- To describe that something said is really true and exactly what the word means.

J

Das ist Jacke wie Hose

- Describes a fact/situation that doesn't matter.

K

Alles über einen Kamm scheren

- To combine different things into one, being superficial.

Die Katze im Sack kaufen - Ich kauf doch nicht die Katze im Sack!

- To buy something you don't know the qualities of.

Einen Kater haben - Ich habe einen Kater.

- To feel bad in the next morning after drinking too much.

Auf den Keks/die Nerven gehen - Geh' mir nicht auf die Nerven.

- To be annoying.

Etwas nicht auf die Kette kriegen - Paul kriegt heute aber nichts auf die Kette.

- To not be able to do something. Mostly a task.

Die Kirche im Dorf lassen - Jetzt lass mal die Kirche im Dorf!

- To demand that someone does not exaggerate a fact they speak of.

Halt die Klappe!

- Commanding someone to shut up.

Nicht gleich den Kopf abbreißen - Sie reißen dir sicher nicht gleich den Kopf ab.

- A saying to calm someone, that the bad thing they did was not bad enough for others to punish it. There are worse things.

Drei Kreuze [in den Kalender] machen - Ich mach drei Kreuze in den Kalender, wenn wir das geschafft haben.

- To state that one will be really happy if a certain task or event has been completed.

M

Etwas ist zum Mäusemelken - Das ist doch zum Mäusemelken.

- To describe something or an event that is weird, unbelievable. Can be an expression of frustration.

Auf jemandes Mist gewachsen sein - Das ist nicht auf meinem Mist gewachsen.

- Stating that one does not have anything to do with something that is happening. Always reflexive.

Einen Kater haben - Ich habe einen Kater.

- To feel bad in the next morning after drinking too much.

Hinter dem Mond leben - Lebst du hinter dem Mond, oder was?

- Wondering that someone doesn't know something about a current event. Living behind the moon, basically.

Aus einer Mücke einen Elefanten machen - Jetzt machst du aber aus einer na' Mücke nen' Elefanten.

- Stating that someone overexaggerates something. To make an elefant out of a fly.

N

Eine Nachteule - Michael ist eine Nachteule.

- Describes someone who is more active during the night than day, who stays awake deep into the night.

Eine Nacht-und-Nebel-Aktion - Sie haben das alles in einer Nacht-und-Nebel-Aktion gemacht.

- Describing an action that has been done in secret. Also joking about said - sometimes bad planned - action.

Eine Nadel im Heuhaufen (suchen) - Das ist wie eine Nadel im Heuhaufen.

- To describe looking for something that is almost impossible to find. The needle in the haystack.

Den Nagel auf den Kopf treffen - Jetzt triffst du den Nagel aber auf den Kopf.

- To say exactly the right thing or guess the right thing.

Sich etwas unter den Nagel reißen - Sie haben sich die Bücher unter den Nagel gerissen.

- To say that someone took possession of something without the right to do so.

Sich an die eigene Nase fassen - Er sollte sich an die eigene Nase fassen.

- To state that someone should look for mistakes in themselves than others first.

O

Einen Obolus entrichten - Du musst nur einen kleinen Obolus entrichten.

- To have to pay a small sum.

Nicht ohne sein - Sie ist nicht ohne.

- Describes that someone has some especially good or bad traits.

Sich etwas hinter die Ohren schreiben - Schreib dir das hinter die Ohren.

- To state that someone shouldn't forget what one told them. Can be a warning not to do it again.

Faustdick hinter den Ohren haben/ein Schlitzohr sein - Er hat es faustdick hinter den Ohren./Stephan ist ein Schlitzohr.

- Stating that someone else is tricky, artful, sly or cunning. Can be a warning against them.

Noch grün hinter den Ohren sein - Er ist noch ganz grün hinter den Ohren.

- Describing the lack of experience of someone else.

Jemanden übers Ohr hauen - Die haben dich über die Ohren gehauen!

- Stating that someone else swindled someone.

Öl ins Feuer gießen - Gieß doch kein Öl ins Feuer.

- To make a situation worse.

P

Das sind zwei Paar Schuhe

- To compare two things that are not comparable.

Auf die Palme bringen - Sie bringen mich so auf die Palme!

- States to being angry about something.

Seine Pappenheimer kennen - Ich kenne meine Pappenheimer.

- To say that one knows a group's of individuals well and can assess their strengths and weaknesses.

Geh hin, wo der Pfeffer wächst - Die können dahin gehen wo der Pfeffer wächst!

- Wanting someone to leave, preferably far away.

Der springende Punkt - Das ist der springende Punkt!

- Stating the gist/nitty-gritty of the matter.

Ohne Punkt und Komma reden/schreiben - Lisa redet/schreibt ohne Punkt und Komma.

- Stating that someone speaks a lot. Or (with schreiben) that someone always writes long sentences.

Bis in die Puppen wach bleiben - Sie waren wieder wach bis in die Puppen.

- Describing that one was going to bed very late.

Q

Quatsch/Quark reden - Red' doch nicht so einen Quark.

- Saying that someone should stop saying nonsense.

An der Quelle sitzen - Ich sitze hier direkt an der Quelle.

- Describing that one has easy access to something.

R

Die Radieschen von unten betrachten - Jetzt betrachtet er die Radieschen von unten.

- Saying someone is dead or has been dead for a while.

Wie ein Rohrspatz schimpfen - Stephanie schimpft wie ein Rohrspatz.

- Swearing like a sailor.

Rom wurde auch nicht an einem Tag erbaut

- To say that everything good needs time.

Ruckzuck - Jetzt aber ruckzuck./ Das geht ruckzuck!

- To say that someone should do something fast or that doing something doesn't take much time.

S

Den Salat haben - Das hättestest du nicht tun sollen. Jetzt haben wir den Salat.

- Stating that an accident happened.

Ein Schatten seiner selbst sein - Sie ist nur noch ein Schatten ihrer selbst.

- Saying that someone is only a shadow of one's former self

Über seinen Schatten springen - Du musst über deinen Schatten springen.

- To say that one should change one's behaviour for the better, do something they usually don't dare to do.

Böses im Schild führen - Er führt nur Böses im Schild.

- Stating that someone has only bad intentions.

Mit etwas Schindluder treiben - Olav treibt nur Schindluder damit.

- To act irresponsible with something.

Jemanden auf die Schippe/den Arm nehmen - Sie nehmen dich auf die Schippe.

- To take someone for a ride.

Auf dem Schlauch stehen - Robert steht auf dem Schlauch.

- Stating that someone doesn't understand something, can't follow the arguments.

Auf die Schnauze fallen - Paul ist damit so auf die Schnauze gefallen.

- State that someone failed at something.

Freuen wie ein Schneekönig - Sebastian freut sich wie ein Schneekönig.

- State that someone failed at something.

Schnee von gestern - Das ist Schnee von gestern.

- That's water under a bridge.

Alter Schwede!

- Expression of respect or surprise.

Hinter schwedischen Gardinen sein - Rebecca ist hinter schwedischen Gardinen.

- Stating that someone is in jail.

Den inneren Schweinehund überwinden - Du musst deinen inneren Schweinehund überwinden.

- To fight against the inner resistance to do something.

Ich glaub' mein Schwein pfeift!

- Expression of surprise and outrage.

Schwein haben - Da hat Charlotte aber Schwein gehabt

- Expression of relieve that nothing bad happened

Jemanden im Stich lassen - Der Vogel (a person) hat mich im Stich gelassen.

- To abandon someone, to turn one's back on someone.

T

Mit jemandem Tacheles reden - Ich muss mit Laura mal Tacheles reden.

- To be frank about issue with someone.

Nicht alle Tassen im Schrank haben - Anne hat nicht alle Tassen im Schrank.

- Stating that someone has lost their marbles.

Über den Tellerrand blicken - Olav muss mal über den Tellerrand blicken.

- To look beyond one's own nose.

Tomaten auf den Augen haben - Du hast doch Tomaten auf den Augen!

- Saying that someone can't see the obvious in front of them.

Eine treulose Tomate sein - Thomas ist aber auch eine treulose Tomate.

- Describes someone who doesn't attend appointments or is not true to their word.

U

Nichts für ungut - Ich möchte heute Abend nicht kommen, nichts für ungut.

- No hard feelings.

V

Sich in etwas verbissen haben - Danielle hat sich da echt in etwas verbissen.

- Stating that one wants to do one own's mind, no matter what.

Etwas vermasseln - Er hat es vermasselt.

- To fail at something.

In jemanden verschossen sein - Er ist so in Clarissa verschossen.

- To madly fall in love with someone.

Etwas auf Vordermann bringen - Lena bringt ihr Zimmer auf Vordermann.

- Cleaning up something or improving something.

Etwas verschlimmbessern - Lisa redet/schreibt ohne Punkt und Komma.

- To try to make something better but making it worse.

W

Den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht sehen - Er sieht den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht.

- To get bogged down. Not being able to see the big picture.

Stille Wasser sind tief (und dreckig).

- Describes that one can get the wrong impression about someone else, especially introverted people.

Das Wasser bis zum Hals stehen haben - Ihr steht das Wasser bis zum Hals.

- Stating one is in a complicated situation which is hard to get out of

Mir läuft das Wasser im Mund zusammen.

- States that one expects food while being hungry.

Nahe am Wasser gebaut sein - Du bist aber nah am Wasser gebaut.

- Describes someone who is emotional and easily cries.

Jemandem das Wasser nicht reichen können - Ich kann ihm das Wasser nicht reichen.

- To not being able to reach someone's performance.

Wie ein Wasserfall reden - Christian redet aber wie ein Wasserfall.

- Describes someone who talks a lot.

Alle Wege führen nach Rom.

- Describes that one can reach a goal in different ways.

Die Weisheit mit Löffeln gefressen haben - Ted hat die Weisheit mit dem Löffel gefressen.

- Describes someone who believes to know something but doesn't.

Gegen Windmühlen kämpfen - Er kämpft gegen Windmühlen.

- To describe one who battles an unwinnable fight.

Das letzte Wort haben - Sie hat immer das letzte Wort.

- To state that one will always the last argument/word in an argument.

Es geht um die Wurst.

- Stating that the result of something is important and not decided yet.

Das ist mir wurst/wurscht.

- To state that something is not important

In die Wüste schicken - Sie hat ihn in die Wüste geschickt.

- To fire/lay-off or to dismiss someone.

Z

Keinen Zacken aus der Krone fallen - Da fällt dir kein Zacken aus der Krone.

- To state that someone should do something they don't like to.

Einen Zahn zulegen - Leg mal nen' Zahn zu Matthias.

- To say that someone should do something faster.

Jemanden den Zahn ziehen - Den Zahn haben wir ihm gezogen.

- To keep someone from following an idea.

Mit dem Zaunpfahl winken - Das war ein Wink mit dem Zaunpfahl

- To state that something was an obvious hint about something.

Das Zeug dazu haben - Fritjof hat das Zeug dazu.

- Stating that one is able to do something.

In der Zwickmühle stecken - Ich stecke in der Zwickmühle.

- To be in a situation where it is hard to chose an outcome, as both are good and bad.

Auf keinen grünen Zweig kommen - Er kommt auf keinen grünen Zweig.

- To not being able to reach a stable financial position. Costs are higher han the income.

SENTENCES

Monday, October 29, 2018 5:10 AM

While there are cases in which German and English word order are identical, German word order (die Wortstellung) is generally more variable and flexible than English. A "normal" word order places the subject first, the verb second, and any other elements third, for example: "Ich sehe dich." ("I see you.") or "Er arbeitet zu Hause." ("He works at home.").

Sentence Structure

- Simple, declarative sentences are identical in German and English: Subject, verb, other.
- The [verb](#) is always the second element in a German sentence.
- With compound verbs, the second part of the verb goes last, but the conjugated part is still second.
- German sentences are usually "[time](#), manner, place.
- After a subordinate clause / conjunction, the verb goes last.

Throughout this article, note that verb refers to the [conjugated](#) or finite verb, i.e., the verb that has an ending that agrees with the subject (er geht, wir geh en, du gehst, etc.). Also, "in second position" or "second place," means the second element, not necessarily the second word. For example, in the following sentence, the subject (Der alte Mann) consists of three words and the verb (kommt) comes second, but it is the fourth word:

"Der alte Mann kommt heute nach Hause."

Compound Verbs

With compound verbs, the second part of the verb phrase ([past participle](#), separable prefix, infinitive) goes last, but the conjugated element is still second:

- "Der alte Mann kommt heute an."
- "Der alte Mann ist gestern angekommen."
- "Der alte Mann will heute nach Hause kommen."

However, German often prefers to begin a sentence with something other than the subject, usually for emphasis or for stylistic reasons. Only one element can precede the verb, but it may consist of more than one word (e.g., "vor zwei Tagen" below).

In such cases, the verb remains second and the subject must immediately follow the verb:

- "Heute kommt der alte Mann nach Hause."
- "Vor zwei Tagen habe ich mit ihm gesprochen."

The Verb Is Always the Second Element

No matter which element begins a German declarative sentence (a statement), the verb is always the second element. If you remember nothing else about German word order, remember this: the subject will either come first or immediately after the verb if the subject is not the first element. This is a simple, hard and fast rule. In a statement (not a question) the verb always comes second.

This rule applies to sentences and phrases that are independent clauses. The only verb-second exception is for dependent or subordinate clauses. In subordinate clauses, the verb always comes last. (Although in today's spoken German, this rule is often ignored.)

One other exception to this rule: interjections, exclamations, names, certain adverbialphrases are usually set off by a comma. Here are some examples:

- "Nein, der alte Mann kommt nicht nach Hause."
- "Maria, ich kann heute nicht kommen."
- "Wie gesagt, das kann ich nicht machen."

In the sentences above, the initial word or phrase (set off by a comma) comes first but does not alter the verb-second rule.

Time, Manner, and Place

Another area where German syntax may vary from that of English is the position of expressions of time (wann?), manner (wie?) and place (wo?). In English, we would say, "Erik is coming home on the train today." English word order in such cases is place, manner, time... the exact opposite of German. In English it would sound odd to say, "Erik is coming today on the train home," but that is precisely how German wants it said: time, manner, place. "Erik kommt heute mit der Bahn nach Hause."

The only exception would be if you want to start the sentence with one of these elements for emphasis. Zum Beispiel: "Heute kommt Erik mit der Bahn nach Hause." (Emphasis on "today.") But even in this case, the elements are still in the prescribed order: time ("heute"), manner ("mit der Bahn"), place ("nach Hause").

If we start with a different element, the elements that follow remain in their usual order, as in: "Mit der Bahn kommt Erik heute nach Hause." (Emphasis on "by train" - not by car or plane.)

German Subordinate (or Dependent) Clauses

Subordinate clauses, those parts of a sentence that cannot stand alone and are dependent on another part of the sentence, introduce more complicated word order rules. A subordinate clause is introduced by a subordinating conjunction (*dass, ob, weil, wenn*) or in the case of relative clauses, a relative pronoun (*den, der, die, welche*). The conjugated verb is placed at the end of a subordinate clause ("post position").

Here are some examples of subordinate clauses in German and English. Notice that each German subordinate clause (in bold type) is set off by a comma. Also, notice that the German word order is different from that of the English and that a subordinate clause may

come first or last in a sentence.

- „Ich weiß nicht, wann er heute ankommt.“ | “I don't know when he arrives today.”
- „Als sie hinausging, bemerkte sie sofort die glühende Hitze.“ | “When she went out, she immediately noticed the intense heat.”
- „Es gibt eine Umleitung, weil die Straße repariert wird.“ | “There's a detour because the road is being repaired.”
- „Das ist die Dame, die wir gestern sahen.“ | “That's the lady (that/whom) we saw yesterday.”

Some German-speakers these days ignore the verb-last rule, particularly with *weil* (because) and *dass* (that) clauses. You may hear something like "...weil ich bin müde" (because I'm tired), but it's not [grammatically correct German](#).

One theory blames this trend on English-language influences!

Conjunction First, Verb Last

As you can see above, a German subordinate clause always starts with a subordinating conjunction and ends with the conjugated verb. It is always set off from the main clause by a comma, whether it comes before or after the main clause. The other sentence elements, such as *time*, *manner*, *place*, fall into the normal order. The one thing you must remember is that when a sentence starts with a subordinate clause, as in the second example above, the very first word after the comma (before the main clause) must be the verb. In the example above, the verb *bemerkte* was that first word (note the differences between the English and German word order in that same example).

Another type of subordinate clause is the relative clause, which is introduced by a relative pronoun (as in the previous English sentence). Both relative clauses and subordinate clauses with a conjunction have the same word order. The last example in the sentence pairs above is actually a relative clause. A relative clause explains or further identifies a person or thing in the main clause.

Subordinating Conjunctions

One important aspect of learning to deal with subordinate clauses is to be familiar with the subordinating conjunctions that introduce them.

All of the subordinating conjunctions listed in this chart require the conjugated verb to go at the end of the clause they introduce. Another technique for learning them is to learn the ones that are NOT subordinating, since there are fewer of those.

The coordinating conjunctions (with normal word order)

are: aber, denn, entweder/oder (either/or), weder/noch (neither/nor), and und.

Some of the subordinating conjunctions can be confused with their second identity as prepositions (*bis*, *seit*, *während*), but this is usually not a big problem. The word *als* is also used in comparisons (*größer als*, bigger than), in which case it is not a subordinating conjunction. As always, you have to look at the context in which a word appears in a sentence.

German Subordinating Conjunctions	
DEUTSCH	ENGLISH
als	as, when
bevor	before
bis	until
da	as, since (because)
damit	so that, in order that
dass	that
ehe	before (re old Engl. "ere")
falls	in case
indem	while
nachdem	after
ob	whether, if
obgleich	although
obschon	although
obwohl	although
seit/seitdem	since (time)
sobald	as soon as
sodass / so dass	so that
solang(e)	as/so long as
trotzdem	despite the fact that
während	while, whereas
weil	because
wenn	if, whenever

Note: All of the interrogative words (*wann, wer, wie, wo*) can also be used as subordinating conjunctions.

From <<https://www.thoughtco.com/german-sentences-in-the-right-order-4068769>>

DECLARATIVE SENTENCE

Monday, October 22, 2018 7:11 AM

The Declarative Sentence (der Aussagesatz)

I. The Predicate (= Verb Phrase):

The most important concept for determining word order in German is the predicate. Sometimes called the "verb phrase" or "the verbal idea", the predicate can be a complex entity, especially in German. In a declarative sentence, its most basic form contains a finite verb, i.e., the one that changes with the subject: "Der Mann beißt den Hund" (The man bites the dog); "Die Männer beißen den Hund" (The men bite the dog).

a. The Position of the Finite Verb:

In a German declarative sentence, the finite verb always stands in the second position, while other elements can be moved around to indicate emphases in meaning: "Der Mann **beißt** den Hund"; "Den Hund **beißt** der Mann." This rule is so firm that when someone in conversation says, "Weiß ich nicht" or "Tut er nicht," it is clear to everyone that the initial word, "das," has been omitted and that the finite verb is still in the second position.

b. Verb Complements:

But the predicate can comprise more than just the finite verb. When it contains other elements, such as past participles, infinitives, or modal auxiliaries, these elements go to the end of the clause, while the finite part stands in the second position:

Der Mann **hat** den Hund **gebissen** (or: Den Hund **hat** der Mann **gebissen**.)

The man bit the dog.

Der Mann **wird** den Hund **beißen** (or: "Den Hund **wird** der Mann **beißen**)

The man will bite the dog.

Der Mann **will** den Hund **beißen** (or: "Den Hund **will** der Mann **beißen**)

The man wants to bite the dog.

Der Mann **wird** den Hund **beißen wollen**. (or: "Den Hund **wird** der Mann **beißen wollen**).

The man will want to bite the dog.

Sie **geht** heute **einkaufen**. (or: Heute **geht** sie **einkaufen**).

She is going shopping today.

Mein Bruder **lernt** jetzt **fahren**. (or: Jetzt **lernt** mein Bruder **fahren**).

My brother is learning to drive now.

Wann **geht** Ihr Kind **schlafen**?

When does your child go to bed?

If the finite verb has a separable prefix, that, too, goes to the end:

Wir **holen** meine Mutter am Bahnhof **ab**. *We're picking my mother up at the train station.*

c. Verb Complements Made from Other Parts of Speech:

To some degree in English, but much more so in German, the predicate can contain other parts of speech that combine with the verb conceptually. These "verb complements" are necessary parts of the predicate's meaning, not just augmentations. Here are three common examples:

Sie **spielt** gern **Tennis**. *She likes to play tennis.*

Ich **spiele** fast jeden Tag **Schach**. *I play chess almost every day.*

Ich **nehme** lieber in der ersten Reihe **Platz**. *I prefer to sit (take a seat) in the first row.*

In each case, the predicate is made up of the verb (in second position) and the object that is necessary to its meaning in this sentence (at the end). The concepts being presented are not simply verbs ("spielen" and "nehmen") that are then modified by their objects, but rather conceptual entities: "Tennis spielen," "Schach spielen," and "Platz nehmen." "Tennis," "Schach," and "Platz" are placed at the end of the clause just as if they were separable prefixes.

Such complements are not limited to nouns:

Er **liest** ein Buch **mit seinen Kindern**. *He reads a book with his children.*

Here, "mit seinen Kindern lesen" is the verbal concept.

d. Qualifiers (Non-Obligatory Elements):

Note the contrast between these two sentences:

Ich **fahre** gern **Auto**. *I like to drive (a car).*

Ich **fahre** dieses Auto **gern**. *I like to drive this car.*

In the first sentence, the concept is "Auto fahren." In the second, the concept is "fahren" (modified by "gern"), and "dieses Auto" is the object - what I like to drive - and hence is not positioned at the end as a verbal complement.

Another example:

Sie sieht ihn oft im Supermarkt. *She often sees him in the supermarket.*

Here the "ihn" is not a necessary part of the predicate; rather, it modifies the act of seeing (as do "oft" and "im Supermarkt").

Die Kinder **sehen** fast jeden Abend **"Das Sandmännchen"**. *The children watch "The Sandman" almost every evening. [= a children's tv show]*

In this example, the "Sandmännchen" is a defining element of the children's activity: "Sandmännchen sehen".

Note that it is also possible to say: "Die Kinder sehen 'Das Sandmännchen' fast jeden Abend." This variation creates a different concept. Here 'Das Sandmännchen' is the show that the children watch, the object of their "sehen," and "fast jeden Abend" becomes the more important information.

He has visions every day. ["Visionen haben" is the verbal idea]

e. The Predicate Nominative and Predicate Adjective:

English-speakers may feel more comfortable with this way of thinking about the "verb complement" when considering the "predicate nominative":

Er **ist** meistens **ein guter Freund**. *He is mostly a good friend.*

and the "predicate adjective":

In der Nacht **sind** alle Katzen **grau**. *At night all cats are gray.*

In these examples, German indicates in two ways that "ein guter Freund" and "grau" are part of the predicate: through inflection (in the case of "friend," by putting him in the nominative; in the case of "gray", by giving it no ending) and through position (both "friend" and "gray" are placed at the end, indicating that they are part of the "verbal idea": "Freund sein"; "grau sein"). Other examples:

"fleißig sein": Sie **ist** in der Schule sehr **fleißig**. *She's very industrious in school.*

"unhöflich sein": **Bist** du auch mit deinen Freunden so **unhöflich**? *Are you that impolite with your friends, too?*

"zu Hause sein": Sie **ist** meistens **zu Hause**. *She's usually home.*

In German the predicate nominative is formed not only with the verb "sein" ("to be"), but also with "werden" ("to become") and "bleiben" ("to remain"). One could, in a way, say that these three verbs take a nominative object:

"mein vierter Mann werden": Er **wurde** nach diesem großen Abenteuer **mein vierter Mann**. *He became my fourth husband after this great adventure.*

"mein bester Freund bleiben": Er **bleibt** trotz allem **mein bester Freund**. *Despite everything he remains my best friend.*

f. Dative nouns:

The dative object of nouns does not have this complementary function and thus always comes shortly after the finite verb:

Sie antwortet dem Mann sehr freundlich. *She answers the man in a friendly way.*

Wir sind meiner Mutter in der U-Bahn begegnet. *We ran into my mother in the subway.*

Ich glaubte meinem Vater alles. *I believed everything my father said.*

Du solltest deinen Großeltern für das Geschenk mit einem Brief danken. *You ought thank your grandparents for the present with a letter.*

g. Pronouns As Part of the Predicate:

Except in the reflexive, dative or accusative pronouns cannot serve as a verbal complement, and even reflexive pronouns cannot take the final position:

Du widersprichst mir jedes Mal. *You contradict me every time.*

Ich bestelle das bei meinem Weinhändler. *I order that from my wine dealer.*

Mein Vater rasiert sich jeden Morgen. *My father shaves every morning.*

Ich **fühle mich** hier in Berlin sehr **zu Hause**. *I feel very much at home here in Berlin.*

(The predicate here = "sich zu Hause fühlen")

II. The Placement of Dative and Accusative Objects:

a. Again, when an accusative noun object is an obligatory part of the predicate's meaning, it is positioned at the end:

Ich **gebe** dir bei nächster Gelegenheit **ein besseres Buch**. *I'll give you a better book at the next opportunity.*

(The predicate = "ein besseres Buch geben")

b. When a **dative** (indirect) noun object and an **accusative** (direct) object are next to or near each other, the dative noun comes first:

Sie gibt ihrem Mann einen Kuss auf die Glatze. *She gives her husband a kiss on his bald head.*

Er schickt seiner Mutter eine Email. *He sends his mother an e-mail.*

c. If the accusative and dative are both pronouns, the accusative precedes:

Ich zeige es dir. *I'll show it to you.*

Sie erzählt sie ihnen. *She tells it to them.*

d. If one object is a pronoun and the other a noun, the pronoun always precedes:

Sie verspricht es ihrem Vater. *She promises it to her father.*

Ich schlage dir etwas Besseres vor. *I'll suggest something better to you.*

While most verbs distinguish direct and indirect objects through a combination of the accusative and dative, *fragen*, *kosten*, and *lehrendo* not follow this pattern; both objects are accusative. However, these two objects have the order you would expect:

Darf ich dich etwas Persönliches fragen? *May I ask you something personal?*

Das hat den Mann eine Menge Geld gekostet. *That cost the man a bunch of money.*

Sie lehrt ihren Bruder die deutsche Sprache. *She's teaching her brother the German language.*

III. The Position of the Nominative Subject.

The subject often precedes the verb, standing in the first position:

Der Laden bietet seinen Kunden ein echtes Schnäppchen. *The store offers its customers a real bargain.*

Das Hotel serviert seinen Gästen jeden Morgen ein opulentes Frühstück. *The hotel serves its guests an opulent breakfast every morning.*

But the speaker always has the option of emphasizing some other element of the sentence (except for the verb) by putting it in the first position. In that case, the subject follows the verb (in third position):

Seinen Kunden bietet **der Laden** ein echtes Schnäppchen.

Ein echtes Schäppchen bietet **der Laden** seinen Kunden.

Jeden Morgen serviert **das Hotel** seinen Gästen ein opulentes Frühstück.

Seinen Gästen serviert **das Hotel** jeden Morgen ein opulentes Frühstück.

Ein opulentes Frühstück serviert **das Hotel** seinen Gästen jeden Morgen.

In German such inversions are part of ordinary spoken and written discourse.

German ears prefer pronouns to precede nouns wherever possible, even when the noun is the subject in "third position". Thus "Der Mann rasiert sich jeden Tag gründlich." (*The man shaves himself thoroughly every day*) becomes, when the order is inverted: "Jeden Tag rasiert sich der Mann gründlich."

Similarly: "Gestern ist ihm die Frau zweimal begegnet." (*Yesterday the woman met him twice*).

In the "inverted word order" some element other than the subject (or the finite verb) occupies the first position. While this first element receives a bit more emphasis, the effect is not especially strong. Contrast this with Yiddishisms in English like, "On the floor you throw the salad?!" "A shot in the head he needs."

With age, chronic iron, nickel, and copper deficiencies often appear.

Some examples of inverted word order:

Morgen sollten wir schwimmen gehen. *Tomorrow we ought to go swimming.*

Am Freitag kannst du ihm das Buch geben. *On Friday you can give him the book.*

(English also permits these inversions.)

Das Buch kannst du ihm am Freitag geben. *You can give him the book on Friday..*

(Here the inversion is not possible in English without further elements: *The book (is what) you can give him on Friday.*)

Mit dem Bus fährt sie am liebsten. *She most prefers to go by bus.*

(No such inversion does English permit.)

Sehr gut hast du das heute Abend gespielt. *You played that very well tonight.*

(It would be possible to say in English, "Tonight you played that very well," or even, with added emphasis, "*That* you played very well tonight," but not: "Very well you played that tonight.")

Gesagt habe ich das nie. *I never said that.*

Arbeiten will ich erst dem dem Essen. *I don't want to work until after dinner.*

(Even the past participle or an infinitive can be in the first position.¹⁾

Weil es regnet, bringen wir den Schirm mit. *Because it's raining, we're bringing the umbrella along.*

(Even a dependent clause can occupy the first position.)

Ohne zu wissen warum, wirft sie es in den Papierkorb. *Without knowing*

why, she throws it into the wastebasket.

(Here the first position contains an infinitive clause.)

Es spielen zwei Mädchen in der Mannschaft. *There are two girls playing on the team.*

(Here the so-called "introductory *es*" is a "false subject." This structure is also often found in the [passive voice](#). Its only purpose is aesthetic.)

Colloquial speech sometimes makes use of word-order expectations to achieve an effect. By leaving the first position empty but putting the subject after the finite verb, the speaker can actually emphasize the object that should have been there:

Habe ich schon getan. *Did that already (i.e. I already did that.)*

Wissen wir schon. *We already know that.*

Glaube ich nicht. *That I don't believe.*

Muss sie ja nicht. *She doesn't have to (do that).*

At T-Com the prices are falling. T-Com's new Wish-What-You-Want prices are coming March 1st. Then you can decide yourself how you want to save on telephoning.

IV. The Mid-Field (das Mittelfeld):

What German grammarians call the *Mittelfeld* (mid-field) is found between the verb (or the subject or objects immediately following it) and the verb complement. It contains the qualifiers that modify the verb. Most grammar texts describe this part of the declarative sentence as containing the categories of "time - manner - place" and require them to appear in that order. While not wholly wrong, that scheme is too simple. Modern German grammarians have developed a more nuanced scheme (which is designated by the *Eselsbrücke* (mnemonic device), "Tee-Kamel"):

Te (*temporal*) Ka (*kausal*) Mo (*modal*) Lo (*lokal*)

- "Te" represents time expressions - when something happens: "heute", "oft", "in einer Stunde", etc. If there is more than one expression in this category, the general precedes the specific: "Montag um 8 Uhr."
- "Ka" indicates why something happens, under what circumstances, or with what consequences: "aus Versehen" [*by mistake*]; "bei gutem Wetter" [*in good weather*]; "zu meinem Erstaunen" [*to my amazement*].
- "Mo" describes manner - how it happens: "traurig" [*sadly*]; "mit Begeisterung" [*with enthusiasm*]; "sehr schnell" [*very fast*]; "ohne Verzögerung" [*without delay*].
- "Lo" indicates location - where it happens: "zu Hause"; "in die Stadt"; "in der Stadt"; "über die Straße".

Here is an example of an admittedly unlikely declarative sentence, one that contains all of the aforementioned elements. It has a subject ("viele Ehemänner") in first position, a predicate consisting of a finite verb (sehen) in the second position and the remaining part ("alle Sportsendungen") in the

final position. The "mid-field" contains the modifying expressions in the "expected" or "standard" order: Te ("jeden Sonntag") - Ka ("zum Entsetzen ihrer Frauen") - Mo ("völlig passiv") - Lo ("in ihrem Lieblingsessel"):

Viele Ehemänner sehen jeden Sonntag zum Entsetzen ihrer Frauen völlig passiv in ihrem Lieblingssessel alle Sportsendungen. *Many husbands, to their wives' disgust, watch all the sports shows completely passively every Sunday in their favorite easy chair.*

Note what nuances of meaning are created when the "expected" order is altered, when the "Mo" expression, for example, "völlig passiv" is relocated (the way that any other element could be):

Völlig passiv sehen viele Ehemänner jeden Sonntag zum Entsetzen ihrer Frauen in ihrem Lieblingssessel alle Sportsendungen.

Viele Ehemänner sehen **völlig passiv** jeden Sonntag zum Entsetzen ihrer Frauen in ihrem Lieblingssessel alle Sportsendungen.

Viele Ehemänner sehen jeden Sonntag **völlig passiv** zum Entsetzen ihrer Frauen in ihrem Lieblingssessel alle Sportsendungen.

Viele Ehemänner sehen jeden Sonntag zum Entsetzen ihrer Frauen in ihrem Lieblingssessel **völlig passiv** alle Sportsendungen.

A further possibility is available in spoken or literary German:

Viele Ehemänner sehen jeden Sonntag zum Entsetzen ihrer Frauen in ihrem Lieblingssessel alle Sportsendungen, **völlig passiv**.

Style-Tip: Especially in spoken German, comparative phrases using **als** or **wie** often go to the end of a clause:

Du hast das besser gemacht als dein Bruder. *You did that better than your brother.*

Sie ist so groß geworden wie ihre ältere Schwester. *She's gotten as big as her older sister.*

From <<http://www.dartmouth.edu/~deutsch/Grammatik/WordOrder/WordOrder.html>>

INTERROGATIVE SENTENCE

Monday, October 22, 2018 7:14 AM

Interrogative Sentences (Fragesätze).

Are emotions more important to you than conventions?

I. Yes-or-No Questions:

In the case of yes-or-no questions, the first position is empty, and the subject follows the finite verb (this is also the case in the "Sie"-form of the imperative):

Hast du alles dabei? *Do you have everything with you?*

Sind Sie verrückt? *Are you nuts?*

Habt ihr gut geschlafen? *Did y'all sleep well?*

Gibt es etwas zu essen? *Is there something to eat?*

Wird er das bald sagen können? *Will he be able to say that soon?*

Sollen wir ihn nach Hause tragen? *Should we carry him home?*

II. Information Questions:

With questions intended to elicit specific information, on the other hand, the first position contains an interrogative word or phrase such as *wann*, *warum*, *wer*, *wen*, *wem*, *wessen*, *wie*, *wo*, *wohin*, *woher*, *wie viel* (or *wieviel*), *um wieviel Uhr*, *in welcher Straße*, etc. Note that this construction can sometimes involve "normal" word order: *was* can be the subject, as well as an object, and the nominative *wer* is always the subject in such questions. In most cases, however, the interrogative word or phrase is another part of speech: *wen* is a direct object, *wann* an adverb of time, and so forth:

Wer hat den Hut gestohlen? *Who stole the hat?*

Wer soll das Geschirr abspülen? *Who's supposed to do the dishes?*

Wen hast du heute gesehen? *Whom did you see today?*

Wem hast du das gesagt? *Who did you tell that to?*

Wessen Hut trägt meine Frau? *Whose hat is my wife wearing?*

Wann beginnt der Film? *When does the movie start?*

Wann dürfen wir nach Hause? *When may we go home?*

Wie alt ist Ihr Hund? *How old is your dog?*

Was willst du heute Abend machen? *What do you want to do tonight?*

Wo liegt Hanover, New Hampshire? *Where is Hanover, New Hampshire, located?*

Wohin sollen wir jetzt gehen? *Where should go now?*

Zu welcher Zeit lebte Leibniz? *At what time did Leibniz live?*

DEPENDENT CLAUSES

Monday, October 22, 2018 7:14 AM

Dependent Clauses:

Up till this point, we have been equating the German sentence with the main, or independent clause, but we can also use our model to describe dependent clauses.

I. Relative Clauses:

If the first position contains a relative pronoun, it begins a [relative clause](#).

II. Dependent (Subordinate) Clauses:

If it contains a subordinating conjunction, it begins a dependent, or subordinate, clause. There are a great many subordinating conjunctions, some of the more common being:

als (<i>when</i>)	auch wenn (<i>even if</i>)	bevor (<i>before</i>)	bis (<i>until</i>)
damit (<i>so that</i>)	dass (<i>that</i>)	ehe (<i>before</i>)	nachdem (<i>after</i>)
ob (<i>whether</i>)	obwohl (<i>although</i>)	seitdem (<i>since</i>)	während (<i>while</i>)
weil (<i>because</i>)	wenn (<i>if, when</i>)		

The list of subordinating conjunctions also includes all of the interrogative words and phrases when they are used to state indirect questions:

Ich weiß nicht, wann der Zug abfährt. *I don't know when the train leaves.*

Es ist nicht klar, wem das Buch gehört. *It isn't clear to whom the book belongs.*

When a subordinating conjunction occupies the first position, a dependent clause results. Keep in mind that, as the name implies, such a clause is not a whole sentence; an independent, or main clause must also be present. The primary feature of a dependent clause is that the finite verb is no longer in the second position, but moves to the end, following even the verb complement (if there is one). If that complement is a separable prefix, the two elements are written as one word. I.e. "er schläft ein" [*he falls asleep*] becomes "weil er einschläft" [*because he falls asleep*].

Some other examples:

...dass er sein Kind zur Schule fährt ...*that he drives his child to school*

...bevor du nach Hause kommst ...*before you come home*

...nachdem ich so viel zugenommen habe ...*after I gained so much weight*

...während das Semester in Deutschland beginnt ...*while the semester is starting in Germany*

...ob wir ihm alles sagen sollen ...*if we should tell him everything*

...obwohl du ihn erst heute kennen gelernt hast ...*although you never met him until today*



NACHDEM SICH RALF
ENTSCHIEDEN HAT,
SEINE MUSIK BEIM
TESTSIEGER AOL ZU-
SAMMENZUSTELLEN...

... MUSS ER SICH NUR NOCH
ZWISCHEN STEFFI UND JULIA
ENTSCHIEDEN.



After Ralf has decided to assemble his music with the test-winner AOL ... he now just has to choose between Steffi and Julia.

Note that these examples on a dependent clause can precede or follow the main clause. When it precedes, it normally occupies the first position, necessitating an inverted order in the independent clause (i.e. with the subject is located in the third position).

Following:

Es ist schön, dass er sein Kind zur Schule fährt

It's nice that he drives his child to school

Mach deine Arbeit fertig, bevor du nach Hause kommst.

Finish your work before you come home

Preceding:

Nachdem ich so viel zugenommen habe, muss ich vernünftiger essen.

After I have gained so much weight, I'll have to eat more reasonably.

Während das Semester in Deutschland beginnt, liegt er noch am Strand.

While the semester is starting in Germany, he's still lying on the beach

Obwohl du ihn erst heute kennen gelernt hast, scheinst du alles über ihn zu wissen.

Although you never met him until today, you seem to know all about him.

Dependent clauses, including [relative clauses](#), can serve as the subject or object of a sentence:

Dass wir ihm alles sagen sollen, ist nicht so klar.

That we should tell him everything is not so clear.

Ich weiß nicht, was du damit sagen willst.

I don't know what you mean by that.

Whoever has a grasp on his finances is simply more relaxed.

A variation on a dependent clause beginning with "wenn": In both English and German, it is possible to produce the sense of a "wenn"-clause in the [subjunctive voice](#) by omitting the "wenn" and leaving the first position empty (with the finite verb in the second):

Wenn ich das gewusst hätte, dann hätte ich dagegen protestiert.

Hätte ich das gewusst, dann hätte ich dagegen protestiert.

Had I known that, I would have protested against it.

Wenn ich du wäre, würde ich das nicht tun.

Wäre ich du, würde ich das nicht tun.

Were I you, I wouldn't do that.

In German, the same procedure applies, even when the clause is not in the subjunctive:

Wenn das oft vorkommt, kann es bedenklich sein.

If that happens frequently, it can be ominous.

Kommt das oft vor, kann es bedenklich sein.

Double-infinitives in the [perfect tenses](#):

In the case of main (independent) clauses, when [modal auxiliaries](#) and verbs like *sehen*, *hören*, *helfen*, and *lassen* the [perfect tenses](#), they form double-infinitives, which go to the final position of the clause:

Ich habe nichts **sehen können**. *I couldn't see anything.*

Wir hätten das nicht **sagen sollen**. *We shouldn't have said that.*

Der Prinz hat Rapunzel ein Lied **singen hören**. *The prince heard Rapunzel singing a song.*

Er hat ein neues Haus **bauen lassen**. *He had a new house built.*

In a dependent clause, these double-infinitives remain in the final position, and the conjugated auxiliary verb, *haben* or *sein*, slips into the second-the-last place:

Bist du sicher, dass sie das Buch hat **lesen können**?

Are you sure that she was able to read the book?

Wir sind nach Hause gegangen, weil wir keine Karten haben **kaufen können**.

We went home because we couldn't buy any tickets.

Es ist schade, dass du ihn nie hast **singen hören**.

It's too bad that you've never heard him sing.

Er hatte kein Geld mehr, weil er ein neues Haus hatte **bauen lassen**.

He didn't have any more money, because he had had a new house built.

Sie erinnert sich nicht daran, dass ich ihr habe **kochen helfen**.

She doesn't remember that I helped her cook.

III. Infinitive Clauses

Infinitive clauses are kind of dependent clause in which there is no grammatical subject, only an implied one, and therefore the verb is not inflected. Note that the infinitive takes "zu."

Es wundert mich, **sie hier zu sehen**.

It surprises me to see them here.

Er hat vergessen, **seiner Freundin etwas zum Geburtstag zu kaufen**.

He forgot to buy his girlfriend something for her birthday.

If the verb in question has a separable prefix, the zu goes between the prefix and the stem (e.g. *anzufangen* [to begin], *zuzumachen* [to close]).

Longer infinitive clauses are set off by a comma. Note also that infinitive clauses can occupy the first position and can even become the subject of another clause.

It is useful to view infinitive clauses as transformations of declarative main clauses. To make the transition, one drops the subject and converts the finite verb to an infinitive, which goes to the end of the clause (Note that in some cases one of the negatives must also be dropped in order to retain the intended meaning):

Es ist schön. Wir gehen an einem heißen Sommertag schwimmen.

Es ist schön, an einem heißen Sommertag schwimmen zu gehen.

It's nice to go swimming on a hot summer's day.

Er versucht. Er bindet sich die Schuhe mit einer Hand.

Er versucht, sich die Schuhe mit einer Hand zu binden.

He tries to tie his shoes with one hand.

Ich habe keine Lust. Ich helfe ihm nicht. *[Note the meaning!]*

Ich habe keine Lust ihm zu helfen.

I have no desire to help him.

Es ist meine Gewohnheit. Ich stehe früh auf.

Es ist meine Gewohnheit früh aufzustehen.

It's my habit to get up early

Man wird Vater. Es ist nicht schwer.

Vater zu werden ist nicht schwer

It's not hard to become a father.

Sie freut sich. Sie hat ihr Referat schon fertiggeschrieben.

Sie freut sich, ihr Referat schon fertiggeschrieben zu haben.

She's happy to have finished writing her paper.

Es muss schön sein. Man kann gut Klavier spielen.

Es muss schön sein, gut Klavier spielen zu können.

It must be nice to be able to play the piano well.

German uses **um ... zu** in order to express intention. This construction can usually be translated by "in order to":

Sie kommen nach Deutschland. Sie wollen Musik studieren.

Sie kommen nach Deutschland, um Musik zu studieren.

They're coming to Germany in order to study music.

Er trainiert jeden Tag. Er will besser Fußball spielen können.

Er trainiert jeden Tag, um besser Fußball spielen zu können.

He practices every day in order to be able to play soccer better.

ohne ... zu and (an)statt ... zu: can also be part of infinitive clauses in German, although in English the same sense is rendered by gerunds:

Er ging nach Hause, ohne ein Wort zu sagen.

He went home without saying a word.

Sie hat mir verziehen, ohne meine Ausrede gehört zu haben.

She forgave me without having heard my excuse.

Statt zu arbeiten ging sie ins Kino.

Instead of working, she went to the movies.

Anstatt zu telefonieren haben wir eine E-mail geschickt.

Instead of telephoning, we sent an e-mail.

From <<http://www.dartmouth.edu/~deutsch/Grammatik/WordOrder/WordOrder.html>>

MAIN CLAUSES

Monday, October 22, 2018 7:15 AM

More About Main Clauses:

I. "non-elements"

We can, in our scheme, further posit a "position 0," which comes before the first position and contains elements (sometimes referred to as "non-elements") that do not affect the subsequent word order. These fall into three categories:

- a. **Coordinating conjunctions**, which introduce an independent clause. The most common are *aber*, *denn*, *oder*, *sondern*, and *und*:

Sie war auch im Kino, **aber** ich habe sie nicht gesehen.

She was also at the movies, but I didn't see her.

Er wollte nicht kommen, **denn**² heute Nacht hat er schlecht geschlafen.

He didn't want to come, because he slept badly last night.

Wir können es mitnehmen, **oder** wir können es hier essen.

We can take it along, or we can eat it here.

Du kannst mir das Geld gleich geben, **oder** du kannst später bezahlen.

You can give me the money right away, or you can pay later.

Er wohnt nicht mehr in der Stadt, **sondern** er ist aufs Land gezogen.

He doesn't live in the city any more, but rather he's moved to the country.

Du hast das bestellt, **und** jetzt musst du es essen.

You ordered that, and now you have to eat it.

- b. **Interjected words or phrases** that are set off by commas.

The most common are *ja* and *nein*:

Ja, ich habe diesen Witz schon gehört. *Yes, I've heard that joke already.*

Nein, du hast schon genug gegessen. *No, you've already eaten enough.*

In addition to *ja* and *nein*, these interjected words or phrases can be exclamations or transitions that introduce the main clause that follows. They are always set off by a comma:

Ach, das Leben ist so schwer! *Oh, life is so hard!*

Übrigens, ich habe den Flaschenöffner vergessen. *By the way, I forgot the bottle-opener.*

Nun, wir können immer auch zu Fuß gehen.³ *Well, we can always go on foot, too.*

- c. **Another possible "non-element" is a preceding independent clause**, which is always set off by a comma:

Er sagte, er wollte uns helfen. *He said he wanted to help us.*

Ich weiß, du hast nichts Böses gemeint. *I know you didn't mean anything bad.*

Ich habe schon gesagt, du kannst mit uns fahren. *I already said, you can ride with us.*

Es ist noch nicht klar, wer das bezahlen wird. *It's not yet clear who's paying for that.*

Note, however, that when a dependent clause *does* fill the first position, whatever its function otherwise, it requires inverted word order to follow:

Weil wir morgen arbeiten müssen, sollen wir jetzt nach Hause gehen. *Since we have to work tomorrow we should go home now.*

Bevor wir anfangen, sollen wir uns vorstellen. *Before we begin we ought to introduce ourselves.*

Was sie damit meinte, weiß ich nicht. *What she meant by that I don't know.*

From <<http://www.dartmouth.edu/~deutsch/Grammatik/WordOrder/WordOrder.html>>

NEGATIONS

Monday, October 22, 2018 7:15 AM

Negations

I. **kein**

Nouns without a definite article are negated by the use of *kein*, which receives the same endings as the other "ein"-words:

Du bist *kein* guter Freund. *You are not a good friend.*

Er spricht *kein* Deutsch. *He doesn't speak any German.*

Ich habe *kein* Geld bei mir. *I don't have any money on me.*

II. **nicht**

The placement of *nicht* to negate a clause is more an art than a science, but determining just what is being negated will go a long way to producing an appropriate structure. (Those preferring to follow a list of set rules would be best served by linking to these [prescriptive instructions for negation](#).)

The key concept to grasp is that the *nicht* precedes the element that it is intended to revoke. If the sentence contains a predicate adjective or predicate noun, that is most likely what is being nullified:

Du bist *nicht* sehr freundlich. *You're not very friendly.*

Sie ist *nicht* meine Schwester. *She's not my sister.*

Here are further examples of the placement of *nicht* so that it negates the key part of the sentence:

Er wäscht sich *nicht* sehr oft. *He doesn't wash very often.*

Wir sind *nicht* immer zu Hause. *We aren't always home.*

Er tut das *nicht* gern. *He doesn't like to do that.*

Sie fährt *nicht* zu schnell. *She doesn't drive too fast.*

Sie arbeitet *nicht* hier. *She doesn't work here.*

Ihr Auto steht *nicht* da. *Her car isn't there.*

Sie kommen *nicht* zu mir. *They're not coming to my house.*

Er joggt *nicht* vor dem Essen. *He doesn't go jogging before dinner.*

Wir fahren *nicht* am Montag. *We're not going on Monday.*

Nicht at the end of the Mid-Field: In each of the above examples, specific information is negated. "Wir fahren *nicht* am Montag" states that the day on which we are not driving is Monday, but we might possibly be going on a different day. The listener might well expect this assertion to be followed by "sondern ..." (*but rather ...*). If, on the other hand, we wish to negate the whole general idea of the sentence, we put

the "nicht" after modifier, at the end of the sentence: "Wir fahren am Montag nicht."

Sie redet nicht. *She isn't talking.*

Wir sehen ihn nicht. *We don't see him.*

Sie schenkt ihm das Buch nicht. *She's not giving him the book.*

Wir gehen heute Nachmittag nicht. *We're not going this afternoon.*

Wir arbeiten sonntags nicht. *We don't work Sundays.*

Er spielt meistens nicht. *He mostly doesn't play.*

Warum können wir ihn nicht sehen? *Why can't we see him?*

If the sentence has a verb complement ("verbal idea"), however, that will be the part that is negated:

Er spielt nicht Schach. *Er doesn't play chess.*

Mein Großvater fährt nicht Auto. *My grandfather doesn't drive.*

Consider this last example: "Mein Großvater fährt nicht Auto." As a similar, previous example pointed out in A.I.c. ("Verb Complements Made from Other Parts of Speech"), the concept here is "Auto fahren". "Auto," in other words, is the verb complement, necessary to the predicate's meaning, and so it goes to the end of the sentence, with the "nicht" preceding it.

Were the auto conceptually the object of "driving", i.e. an augmentation, rather than a necessary part of the predicate, then the sentence would read: "Mein Großvater fährt dieses Auto nicht."

Another point: If the element following the *nicht* moves to the first position, inverting the word order, the *nicht* does not move with it:

Hier arbeitet sie nicht. *She doesn't work here.*

Bei mir darfst du das nicht sagen. *At my house you can't say that.*

Nach dem Essen gehen wir nicht spazieren. *We're not taking a walk after dinner.*

Nach Hause gehen wir nicht. *We're not going home.*

These rules describe the most usual situations, but it is possible to create special emphases when placing *nicht* immediately in front of the element to be negated. If this placement differs from the above examples, then a "sondern" (*but rather*) is probably called for:

Du sollst nicht ihm das Geld geben, sondern mir. *You should give the money not to him, but to me.*

Sie schenkt ihm nicht dieses Buch, sondern ein anderes. *She's not giving him this book, but a different one.*

Wir gehen nicht heute ins Theater, sondern morgen. *We're not going to the theater today, but tomorrow.*

When an adverb is negated as a sentence fragment, it can be thought of as occupying the first position, so that the *nicht* follows it:

hier nicht *not here*

heute nicht *not today*

am Sonntag nicht *not on Sunday*



In a city that never sleeps [i.e., Berlin], no one can afford tired feet.

From <<http://www.dartmouth.edu/~deutsch/Grammatik/WordOrder/WordOrder.html>>

MITTELFIELD

Friday, November 16, 2018 8:13 AM

Position of the object in the Mittelfeld

Objects in the Mittelfeld tend to be arranged in a specific order. This basic word order is different according to whether the objects are noun phrases or pronouns.

Object = noun phrases

Subject	>	Dative object	>	Accusative object	>	Genitive object Prepositional object
---------	---	---------------	---	-------------------	---	---

Objects = pronouns

(only personal pronouns *ich, du, er, sie, es, wir, ihr, sie*, reflexive pronoun *sich*, indefinite pronoun *man*):

Subject	>	Accusative object	>	Dative object	>	Genitive object Prepositional object
---------	---	-------------------	---	---------------	---	---

The objects come after the subject. Exceptions, see [Position of the subject](#) and [Pronoun before noun](#).

Usually, a sentence does not contain more than one or two objects. For this reason we treat the objects separately or in groups of two:

[Dative object and accusative object](#)

[Accusative object and accusative object](#)

[Genitive object](#)

[Prepositional object](#)

Dative object and accusative object

When both the dative object and the accusative object are noun phrases, the dative object tends to come before the accusative object:

Noun phrases: Dative object before accusative object

Examples:

Die Großmutter hat ***ihrem Enkel das Album*** geschenkt.
dative obj. accusative obj.

Hat sie ***ihrem Freund die Geschichte*** erzählt?
dative obj. accusative obj.

...weil die Tochter ***den Eltern das Kind*** verheimlicht hatte.

dative obj. accusative obj.

Variations:

The tendency 'dative object before accusative object' is weak. It is often overruled by other tendencies.
For example:

Die Großmutter hat **das Album** **dem Enkel** geschenkt.

old new

See [Old before new](#)

accusative obj. dative obj.

Hat sie **die Geschichte** **einem Freund** erzählt?

definite indefinite

See [Definite before indefinite](#)

accusative obj. dative obj.

The tendency 'dative object before accusative object' is not observed at all when the accusative object is a pronoun:

...weil die Tochter **es** **den Eltern** verheimlicht hatte.

pronoun noun phrase

See [Pronoun before noun](#)

accusative obj. dative obj.

Der Schwiegersohn hat **sich** **ihren Eltern** vorgestellt.

pronoun noun phrase

See [Pronoun before noun](#)

accusative obj. dative obj.

Objects = pronouns:

When both the dative object and the accusative object are pronouns, the accusative object tends to come before the dative object:

Pronouns: Accusative object before dative object

Die Großmutter hat **es** **mir** geschenkt.

accusative obj. dative obj.

Hat sie **sie** **ihm** erzählt?

accusative obj.. dative obj.

Er hat **sich** **ihnen** vorgestellt.

accusative obj.. dative obj.

This tendency is very strong. Variations are very rare.

Accusative object and accusative object

When the Mittelfeld contains two accusative objects, an animate object tends to come before an inanimate object. See [Animate before inanimate](#):

Seine Unfähigkeit hat **den Angestellten die Stelle** gekostet.
animate inanimate
accusative obj. accusative obj.

Die Schulen sollten **die Kinder gutes Benehmen** lehren.
animate inanimate
accusative obj. accusative obj.

Genitive object

The genitive object tends to come last in the Mittelfeld. It is placed after the subject and the accusative object. It does not co-occur with other objects.

The genitive object comes last

Examples:

Am Tag darauf klagte **der Staatsanwalt die beiden Soldaten des Mordes** an.
subject accusative obj. genitive obj.

Warum hat **dich die Nachbarin des Diebstahls** bezichtigt?
accusative obj. subject genitive obj.

Warum hat **dich die Nachbarin dessen** bezichtigt?
accusative obj. subject genitive obj.

The genitive object is also placed after the adverbial(s):

Man hat **gestern in ganz Deutschland der Toten** gedacht.
adverbial adverbial genitive obj.

Exception:

When the genitive object is a pronoun, it can also be placed before the adverbial(s):

Man hat **ihrer gestern in ganz Deutschland** gedacht.
genitive obj. adverbial adverbial

Also: *Man hat gestern in ganz Deutschland ihrer gedacht.*

Prepositional object

The prepositional object tends to come last in the Mittelfeld. It is placed after the subject, the dative object and the accusative object. It does not co-occur with a genitive object.

The prepositional object comes last

Examples:

Dieses Jahr besteht das Examen **aus drei Teilen**.
subject prepositional obj.

Hast du den Brief **an mich** adressiert?
subject accusative obj. prepositional obj.

Ihr solltet eurer Kollegin **zur Geburt ihrer Tochter** gratulieren.
dative obj. prepositional obj.

The prepositional object comes also after the adverbial(s):

Viele haben gestern in Berlin friedlich **gegen die Reform** demonstriert.
adverbial adverbial adverbial prepositional obj.

The position of the prepositional object can be occupied by a pronominal adverb. The same word order principles apply:

Ihr solltet eurer Kollegin **dazu** gratulieren.
dative obj. prepositional obj.

Viele haben gestern in Berlin friedlich **dagegen** demonstriert.
adverbial adverbial adverbial prepositional obj.

From <<http://www.canoo.net/services/OnlineGrammar/Satz/Wortstellung/Stellungsfeld/Mittelfeld/Objekt.html?lang=en>>

FOOTNOTES

Monday, October 22, 2018 7:16 AM

Footnotes:

¹ Sometimes this structure houses the highly colloquial use of "tun" with an infinitive: "Arbeiten tut er nicht" [*Work (is something) he doesn't do*]. "Tun" plus an infinitive is generally found only in dialects and in the speech of small children ("Sie tut es wegwerfen" [*She throws it out*]), but some set phrases are common: "Sie tun nichts als klagen" [*They do nothing but complain*]. Note the historical link to the English use of "do" plus the infinitive, both in emphatic statements and questions ("I do like that"; "Do you think that's necessary?").

[back to text](#)

² Note that "denn," in contrast to "weil," does not cause the finite verb to go to the end.

[back to text](#)

³ Note the distinction between this sentence and "Nun können wir zu Fuß gehen" [*Now we can go on foot*], in which the adverb *nun*occupies the first position and thus inverts the word order.

From <<http://www.dartmouth.edu/~deutsch/Grammatik/WordOrder/WordOrder.html>>

CASE TABLE

Monday, September 24, 2018 2:06 PM

Definite article

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative	der kleine Mann	die kleine Frau	das kleine Kind	die kleinen Kinder
Accusative	den kleinen Mann	die kleine Frau	das kleine Kind	die kleinen Kinder
Dative	dem kleinen Mann	der kleinen Frau	dem kleinen Kind	den kleinen Kindern
Genitive	des kleinen Manns	der kleinen Frau	des kleinen Kinds	der kleinen Kinder

Note: The same endings apply after *jeder/dieser/jener/welcher/solcher/mancher*.

Indefinite article

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative	ein junger Mann	eine junge Frau	ein junges Kind	meine jungen Kinder
Accusative	einen jungen Mann	eine junge Frau	ein junges Kind	meine jungen Kinder
Dative	einem jungen Mann	einer jungen Frau	einem jungen Kind	meinen jungen Kindern
Genitive	eines jungen Manns	einer jungen Frau	eines jungen Kinds	meiner jungen Kinder

Note: The same endings apply after *kein* and the possessive pronouns: *mein/dein/sein/ihr/unser/Ihr/euer*.

No article

	Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
Nominative	junger Mann	junge Frau	junges Kind	junge Kinder
Accusative	jungen Mann	junge Frau	junges Kind	junge Kinder
Dative	jungem Mann	junger Frau	jungem Kind	jungen Kindern
Genitive	jungen Manns	junger Frau	jungen Kinds	junger Kinder

Personal pronouns

	I	you *	he	she	it	we	you *	they	you *
Nominative	ich	du	er	sie	es	wir	ihr	sie	Sie
Accusative	mich	dich	ihn	sie	es	uns	euch	sie	Sie
Dative	mir	dir	ihm	ihr	ihm	uns	euch	ihnen	Ihnen

* du = you (talking to one friend)

* ihr = you (talking to two or more friends)

* Sie = you (talking politely to one or more adults)

Interrogative pronouns

Nominative	wer	who?
Accusative	wen	whom?
Dative	wem	to whom?
Genitive	wessen	whose?

Prepositions and their associated cases

Accusative Dative		Genitive Accusative or Dative	
bis	aus	statt	an
durch	außer	trotz	auf
für	bei	während	hinter
gegen	gegenüber	wegen	in
ohne	mit	++	neben
um	nach		über
	seit		unter
	von		vor
	zu		zwischen

From <<http://esl.fis.edu/learners/fis/german/kasus/caseTables.htm>>

NOMINATIVE CASE

Monday, February 25, 2019 3:07 PM

In English:

In standard English, the subject of a sentence is in the nominative case, which is marked either by word order or by certain forms of personal pronoun (*I, we, he, she, and they*). Thus the difference between "Dog bites man" and "Man bites dog" is clear, as is the difference between "I see her" and "She sees me."

There is also an official "predicate nominative," although it is rarely used in colloquial speech: "It is I," "If I were she."



Are those your eyes? Biotix answers all your questions. [Ad for paternity tests]

In German:

German marks case in a variety of ways, with word order being the least important. The nominative personal pronouns are:

ich = I	wir = we
du = you	ihr = y'all
	Sie = you
er = he	sie = they
sie = she	
es = it	

Four further nominative pronouns are *man, jemand, keiner, and wer*:

Man sagt das nicht.	<i>One doesn't say that.</i>
Das kann man nie wissen.	<i>One can never know that.</i>
Jemand soll ihr helfen.	<i>Someone should help her.</i>
Ihn kennt keiner.	<i>No one knows him.</i>
Wer wohnt hier?	<i>Who lives here?</i>
Ich weiß nicht, wer das gesagt hat.	<i>I don't know who said that.</i>

Articles and adjective endings also mark the nominative case. Note that the adjective endings depend not only on gender, but also on whether they follow a "der-word," an "ein-word" or no article at all:¹

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
der rote Stuhl	die neue Lampe	das alte Buch	die roten Stühle
kein roter Stuhl	keine neue Lampe	kein altes Buch	keine neuen Lampen
roter Stuhl	neue Lampe	altes Buch	alte Bücher

The nominative case is used in five settings:

- To designate the subject of a sentence:

Ein Unglück kommt selten allein. *It never rains but it pours.*

Irren ist menschlich. *To err is human.*

Stille Wasser sind tief. *Still waters run deep.*

Neue Besen kehren gut. *New brooms sweep clean.*

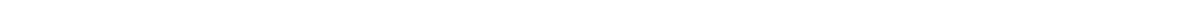
Das Leben ist kurz. *Life is short.*

- As a predicate nominative - or, thought of in another way, as the "object" of the verbs *sein*, *werden*, and *bleiben*:

Sie ist ein kleines Kind. *She's a small child.*

Er ist mein vierter Mann geworden. *He became my fourth husband.*

Er bleibt mein bester Freund. *He remains my best friend.*





Ihr Kind will so gerne Tierarzt werden.

Dann können Sie erklären, dass Mutter Natur sich selbst hilft.

Oder ganz einfach das Studium finanzieren.

Your child wants so much to become a veterinarian. You could explain that Mother Natur helps herself. Or simply finance [your child's] schooling.

- As a citation form (e.g. a dictionary entry or a label). Note: this does not mean that the nominative is a noun's natural state, nor does it imply that the nominative is the default case. Citing in the nominative is simply a convention, adopted in part because the nominative definite articles are unambiguous with respect to gender: *der Stuhl*, *die Lampe*, *das Buch*.
- When addressing someone:

Junger Mann, geben Sie das sofort zurück! *Young man, give that right back!*

Liebe Oma, Dein Brief ist endlich angekommen. *Dear Grandma, your letter finally arrived.*

- In certain exclamations:

Du meine Güte! *For heaven's sake!*

Ach du lieber Gott! *Oh my God!*

Ich Idiot! *I'm such an idiot!*



¹ The so-called "der-words" are the articles *der, die, das; dies-, jed-, jen-, manch-, solch-, welch-*. The "ein-words" are *ein, kein*, and the possessive pronouns: *mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, Ihr, ihr.*

From <<https://www.dartmouth.edu/~deutsch/Grammatik/Nouns/nominative.html>>

NOMINATIVE PRONOUNS

Tuesday, September 4, 2018 12:08 PM

Some other pronouns

Some other words can function as pronouns.

The following ones change their endings like definite articles:

	der	das
this/these	dieser	dieses
every	jeder	jedes
some	mancher	manches
die (fem.)	die (pl.)	
diese	diese	
jede	--	
manche	Manche	

- *Dieser Junge isst, dieser (Junge) trinkt.*
- *This boy eats, that (boy/one) drinks.*
- *Jedes Kind mag Pizza. (Every kid likes pizza.)*
- *Manche Kinder mögen Käse. (Some kids like cheese.)*

Viel* vs. *viele

These roughly correspond to English "much/many". Use *viel* with uncountable nouns, *viele* with countable ones.

- Ich trinke **viel** Wasser.
- Ich habe **viele** Hunde.

Alles* oder *nichts

Just like *nicht* (not) has a look-alike *nichts* (nothing), *alle* (all) has *alles* (everything) as a counterpart.

- Ich esse **nicht**. (I do not eat.)
- Ich esse **nichts**. (I eat nothing.)
- Ich esse **alles**. (I eat everything.)
- Ich esse **alle** (Orangen). (I eat all (oranges).)

Ein paar vs. ein Paar

Ein paar (lowercase *p*) means "a few", "some" or "a couple (of)" (only in the sense of **at least two, not exactly two!**).

Ein Paar (uppercase *P*) means "a pair (of)" and is only used for things that typically come in pairs of two, e.g. *ein Paar Schuhe* (a pair of shoes).

So this is quite similar to English "a couple" (a pair) vs. "a couple of" (some).

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Nominative-Pronouns/tips-and-notes>>

You know how the word for "the" has to match the gender of the noun?

der Mann = "the man"

die Frau = "the woman"

das Auto = "the car"

Well, the word for "this [something]" has to match the gender too. You will notice that the endings are the same as for the forms of "the".

dieser Mann = "this man"

diese Frau = "this woman"

dieses Auto = "this car"

- One thing that is confusing at first is that there's a difference between "this [something]" and just "this" without a noun after it. If you don't have a noun after it you can use **dies**, regardless of the gender of what you're talking about. If you said the sentence **Dies ist stark!** you could be talking about anything.
- If you use the form of "this" with endings *without* a noun, e.g. **Dieses ist stark!** then it can only refer to something with the matching gender (here neuter). Translated, it means something like "this one". It has to be clear from context what you're talking about, otherwise (as in English) someone is likely to ask "this what?".

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/26887108>>

"beide" and not "beiden"

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/822476>>

It's "beide" when it's "both" in the nominative and accusative *without* an article like the sentence above, "Beide mögen Kaffee" or "Ich mag beide."

It's "beiden" in the dative case when there's no article as in "Mit beiden Händen" or "Gib beiden Menschen Kaffee.", etc.

It's also "beiden" when it follows the plural definite article as in "Die beiden sind groß." It's like that in all

cases: Nominative: die beiden Accusative: die beiden Dative: den beiden Genitive: der beiden

And then there's "beides"

"beide" is used in the plural, for **countable** objects:

"Soll ich Mama oder Papa holen?" - "Beide **sollen** kommen!" "Das Radio und das Grammophon standen im Freien, beide **wurden** nass vom Regen."

"beides" is used in the singular, for uncountable objects or abstract objects:

"Magst du Ketchup oder Mayo auf die Pommes?" - "Beides **mussdrauf!**" "Was machst du lieber: Geschirr spülen oder Wäsche bügeln?" - "Das **ist** beides ätzend!"

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/822476>>

ACCUSATIVE I

Thursday, August 16, 2018 10:18 AM

German Cases

In English, the words "he" and "I" can be used as subjects (the ones doing the action in a sentence), and they change to "him" and "me" when they are objects (the ones the action is applied to). Here's an example:

Subject Verb Object

I see him

He sees me

This is called a **grammatical case**: the same word changes its form, depending on its relationship to the verb. In English, only pronouns have cases. In German, **most words** other than verbs (such as nouns, pronouns, determiners, adjectives, etc.) **have cases**.

You'll learn more about cases later; for now you just need to understand the difference between the two simplest cases: **nominative and accusative**.

The **subject** of a sentence (the one doing the action) is in the **nominative** case. So when we say *Die Frau spielt.* (The woman plays.), "die Frau" is in the nominative.

The **accusative object** is the thing or person that is directly receiving the action. For example, in *Der Mann sieht den Ball.* (The man sees the ball.), *der Mann* is the (nominative) subject and *den Ball* is the (accusative) object.

For the articles, nominative and accusative are nearly the same. Only the masculine ("der") forms change:

"a(n)" masc. neut. fem.

Nominative ein ein eine

Accusative einen ein eine

"the" m. n. f. pl.

Nom. der das die die

Acc. den das die die

Flexible sentence order

The fact that most words in German are affected by the case explains why the **sentence order is more flexible than in English**. For example, you can say *Das Mädchen hat den Apfel.* (The girl has the apple.) or *Den Apfel hat das Mädchen.*.. In both cases, *den Apfel* (the apple) is the accusative object, and *das Mädchen* is the subject (always nominative).

However, take note that in German, the **verb always has to be in position 2**. If something other than the subject takes up position 1, the **subject will then move after the verb**.

- Normally, I **drink** water.
- Normalerweise **trinke ich Wasser.**

Vowel change in some verbs

A few common verbs change the vowel in the **second and third person singular**.

Here is the table for a verb without vowel change:

En. person person **trinken**

I ich trinke

you (sg.) du trinkst

he/she/it er/sie/es trinkt

we	wir	trinken
you (pl.)	ihr	trinkt
they	sie	trinken

And here are three verbs with that vowel change. Notice that in the first two verbs, the 2nd and 3rd person singular seem the same. This is just because the *du* ending -st merged with the -s- of the verb stem. This is unrelated to the vowel change.

person	lesen	sprechen
ich	lese	spreche
du	liest	sprichst
er/sie/es	liest	spricht
wir	lesen	sprechen
ihr	lest	sprecht
sie	lesen	sprechen

Similarly, *essen* turns to *du isst/er isst*.

Sprechen (to speak) will be introduced in one of the next lessons.

Isst vs. ist

Isst and *ist* sound exactly the same. So do *Es ist ein Apfel*. and *Es isst ein Apfel*. sound the same?

Yes, but you can tell it's *Es ist ein Apfel*: *Es isst ein Apfel* is ungrammatical. The **accusative** of *ein Apfel* is *einen Apfel*. Hence, *It is eating an apple* translates as *Es isst einen Apfel*.

Of course, this only works for *masculine* nouns. Other forms will look the same in nominative and accusative:

- Er isst eine Banane.
- Er ist eine Banane.

Only context will tell you here :)

Ich habe Brot

In English, you can say "I'm having bread" when you really mean that you're eating or about to eat bread. **This does not work in German.** The verb **haben** refers to possession only. Hence, the sentence *Ich habe Brot* only translates to *I have bread*, not *I'm having bread*. Of course, the same applies to drinks. *Ich habe Wasser* only translates to *I have water*, not *I'm having water*.

Conjugation is also slightly irregular: two forms lose the -b-.

English person	German example
I	ich habe
you (sg.)	du hast
he/she/it	er/sie/es hat
we	wir haben
you (pl.)	ihr habt
they	

ACCUSATIVE II

Monday, February 25, 2019 3:07 PM

In English:

In standard English, the direct object is marked either by word order or by certain forms of personal pronoun (*me, us, him, her, and them*). Thus the difference between "Dog bites man" and "Man bites dog" is clear, as is the difference between "I see her" and "She sees me."



Some things you can't explain in two or three sentences. Up to 15 hours of phone time. The new Gigaset C340.

In German:

The accusative case has several functions in German. It is marked in a variety of ways, with word order being the least important. The accusative personal pronouns are:

mich = me	uns = us
dich = you	euch = y'all
	Sie = you
ihn = him	sie = them
sie = her	
es = it	

There are accusative forms for other pronouns: *man* becomes *einen*, *keiner* becomes *keinen*, and *wer* becomes *wen*. In colloquial speech, *jemand* is usually the same in both the nominative and the accusative, but *jemanden* is possible. The reflexive pronoun "sich" can indicate either the accusative or dative form of *er, sie (= she), es, Sie, or sie (= they)*.

Articles and adjective endings also mark the accusative case. Note that the adjective endings depend not only on gender, but also on whether they follow a

"der-word", an "ein-word", or no article at all:¹

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
-----------	----------	--------	--------

den <u>roten</u> Stuhl	die <u>neue</u> Lampe	das <u>alte</u> Buch	die <u>roten</u> Stühle
keinen <u>roten</u> Stuhl	keine <u>neue</u> Lampe	kein <u>altes</u> Buch	keine <u>neuen</u> Lampen
<u>roten</u> Stuhl	<u>neue</u> Lampe	<u>altes</u> Buch	<u>alte</u> Bücher



Please keep this area open for arriving and departing hotel guests. Many thanks.

There is also a class of so-called weak masculine nouns that take an "-n" in the accusative case (as well as in the dative and genitive cases). Among these nouns are those that end in "-e" (except *Käse* [cheese]):

der Mensch den Menschen [human]	der Nachbar den Nachbarn [neighbor]	der Herr den Herrn [lord; gentleman]	der Held den Helden [hero]
der Name den Namen [name]	der Kunde den Kunden [customer]	der Junge den Jungen [boy]	der Experte den Experten [expert]
der Glaube den Glauben [belief]	der Wille den Willen [will]	der Gedanke den Gedanken [thought]	der Türke den Türken [Turk]
der Jude den Juden [Jew]	der Russe den Russen [Russian]	der Kollege den Kollegen [colleague]	der Riese den Riesen [giant]

Other endings of weak nouns are "-ant," "-arch," "-ege," "-ent," "-ist," "-oge," "-om," "-oph," and "-ot." Some examples:

der Buddist [Buddhist]	der Katholik [Catholic]	der Protestant [Protestant]	der Pilot [pilot]
der Student [student]	der Komödiant [comedian]	der Astronom [astronomer]	der Patriarch [patriarch]
der Philosoph	der Fotograf	der Enthusiast	der Anthropologe

Again: note that all of these nouns are masculine. Furthermore, their plural forms are the same as their accusative forms: e.g., *den Studenten; die Studenten.* ("Herr" is an exception: *den Herrn; die Herren*).

Typically, dictionaries identify weak nouns by giving not only the plural but also the weak ending: "der Bauer (-n, -n) *farmer, peasant.*" This first ending cited is actually that of the genitive case, but with weak nouns the accusative and the genitive are usually identical.



Do you know all of our pharmacy's services? We have a telephone service for our customers. Support hose made to measure. Devices for caring for the sick at home. We measure your blood pressure. We rent out electric breast pumps. We rent out baby scales.

Uses of the accusative case:

- 1) To designate the direct object of a verb. This includes the expression *es gibt:*

Es gibt noch <u>eine Menge</u> zu tun.	<i>There's still a lot to do.</i>
Sie sucht <u>einen reichen Mann</u> .	<i>She's looking for a rich husband.</i>
Arbeit macht <u>das Leben</u> süß.	<i>Work makes life sweet.</i>
Er schreibt ihr <u>einen langen Brief</u> .	<i>He writes her a long letter.</i>
Er trifft <u>den Nagel auf den Kopf</u> .	<i>He hits the nail on the head.</i>
Denn <u>wen</u> der Herr liebt, <u>den</u> züchtigt er wie ein Vater <u>den Sohn</u> , <u>den</u> er gern hat.	<i>For whom the Lord loveth he correcteth, even as the father the son in whom he delighteth.</i>

2) A great many verbs distinguish their direct and indirect objects through a combination of the accusative and dative: "Sie gibt es mir"; "Er schenkt seiner Mutter ein Buch." One would expect *fragen*, *kosten*, and *lehren* to follow the same pattern, but they do not; both objects are accusative:

Darf ich <u>dich etwas Persönliches</u> fragen?	<i>May I ask you something personal?</i>
Das hat <u>mich eine Menge Geld</u> gekostet.	<i>That cost me a bunch of money.</i>
Sie lehrt <u>mir die deutsche Sprache</u> .	<i>She's teaching me the German language.</i>

3) The so-called "cognate accusative" marks a noun that completes or specifies the idea of the verb, even when it is not necessarily a direct object:

Wir fahren am liebsten <u>Rad</u> .	<i>We prefer to bike.</i>
Sie läuft <u>Ski</u> .	<i>She skis.</i>
Wir schliefen <u>den Schlaf</u> des Gerechten.	<i>We slept the sleep of the just.</i>
Er starb <u>den Tod</u> eines Helden.	<i>He died a hero's death.</i>
Sie fährt nur <u>erste Klasse</u> .	<i>She always travels first-class.</i>
Meine Großmutter spielt sehr gut <u>Tennis</u> .	<i>My grandmother plays tennis very well.</i>
Wir laufen <u>Gefahr</u> , den Zug zu verpassen.	<i>We run the risk of missing the train.</i>

4) To indicate specific time (when no prepositions are involved):

Was machst du <u>nächste Woche</u> ?	<i>What're you doing next week?</i>
Jeden <u>Samstag</u> essen wir auswärts.	<i>We eat out every Saturday.</i>
Letztes <u>Jahr</u> sind wir ans Meer gefahren.	<i>Last year we drove to the ocean.</i>

5) To express a measurement:

Er ist <u>zwei Meter</u> groß.	<i>He's two meters tall. (= 6' 6.7")</i>
Er ist <u>einen halben Kopf</u> größer als ich.	<i>He's half a head taller than me.</i>

Das Mädchen ist ein Jahr alt.

The girl is one year old.

Er geht einen Schritt zurück.

He goes one step back.

Der Ort liegt eine Stunde von der Stadt. *The place is an hour from the city.*

6) As the case for certain standard greetings and wishes. The implication is that the speaker is wishing the other something (e.g. "Gute Nacht" is short for "Ich wünsche dir eine gute Nacht." Other examples:

Guten Morgen. *Good morning.*

Schönen Tag noch. *Have a nice (rest of the) day.*

Herzlichen Glückwunsch! *Congratulations!*

Vielen Dank. *Many thanks.*

Gute Besserung. *Get well.*

Guten Appetit. *Bon appetit.*

With prepositions:



On which one will you decide?

1) As the object of the following prepositions: *bis, durch, für, gegen, ohne, um, and wider:*

Er bleibt bis nächste Woche.

He's staying until next week.

Die Liebe geht durch den Magen.

The way to a man's heart is through his stomach.

Er tut alles für sein Kind.

He does everything for his child.

Was hast du gegen ihn?

What do you have against him?

Ohne mich!

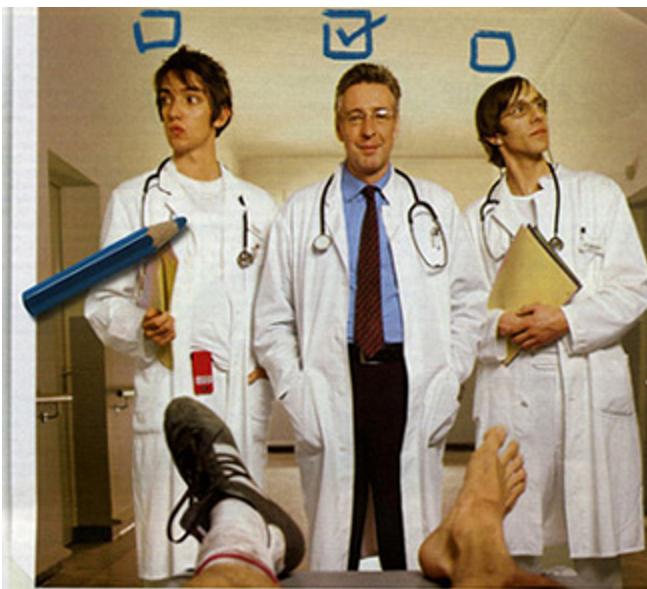
Count me out!

Es geht mir nicht um das Geld.

For me it's not a question of the money.

Seine Handlung war wider das Gesetz.

His action was against the law.



**Entscheiden Sie selbst, wenn
es um Ihre Gesundheit geht.**

Decide yourself when it's a question of your health.

2) Under certain circumstances with the following "two-way" prepositions: *an, auf, hinter, in, neben, entlang, über, unter, vor, and zwischen*. When these prepositions delineate a spacial area, and the verb indicates movement that crosses the border into that area, the preposition takes the accusative (if the action is entirely with the area, then it takes the [dative case](#)):



Sie geht an die Tür.

She goes to the door.

Er wirft sein Buch auf den Tisch.

He throws his book onto the table.

Sie fährt hinter das Haus.

She drives behind the house (into the area behind the house).

Bringen Sie den Stuhl in die Küche

Bring the chair into the kitchen.

Er legt die Bestecke neben den Teller.	<i>He puts the silverware next to the plate (into the area next to the plate).</i>
Er tritt vor das Haus.	<i>He steps out the door (in front of the house).</i>
Der Hund läuft zwischen die Häuser.	<i>The dog runs between the houses (through or into the area between the houses).</i>

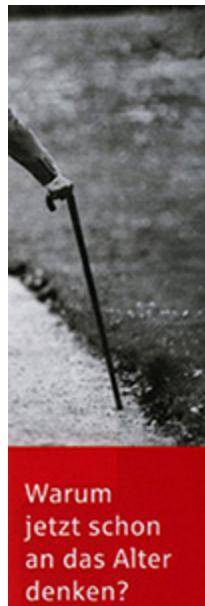
These prepositional phrases are often contracted (if the article is "das"):

Er geht ans Fenster.	<i>He goes to the window.</i>
Sie setzt sich aufs Sofa.	<i>She sits down on the sofa.</i>
Ein Fremder kommt ins Haus.	<i>A stranger comes into the house.</i>
Wir fahren heute aufs Land.	<i>We're driving to the country.</i>
Die Brücke führt übers Wasser.	<i>The bridge leads across the water.</i>

3) When these two-way prepositions define time, rather than space, they take the dative. The exceptions are *auf* and *über*:

Er geht auf (für) ein Jahr nach Mainz.	<i>He's going to Mainz for a year.</i>
Der Vortrag hat über eine Stunde gedauert.	<i>The talk lasted over an hour.</i>
Was machst du übers Wochenende?	<i>What're you doing over the weekend?</i>

4) These two-way prepositions take the accusative case in many idioms, as well. A few examples:



Why think about age already now?

Sie denkt oft an ihre alte Lehrerin.	<i>She often thinks of her old teacher.</i>
--------------------------------------	---

Er glaubt an mehrere Götter.	<i>He believes in several gods.</i>
Wir erinnern uns gern an unsere Kindheit.	<i>We like to remember our childhood.</i>
Ich kann mich nicht an seine schreckliche Stimme gewöhnen.	<i>I can't get used to his terrible voice.</i>
Ich warte auf meine Freundin.	<i>I'm waiting for my girlfriend.</i>
Das geht dich nichts an.	<i>That's none of your business.</i>
Können Sie auf meine Frage antworten?	<i>Can you answer my question?</i>
Wir hoffen auf besseres Wetter.	<i>We're hoping for better weather.</i>
Es ist kein Wunder, dass sie auf dich böse ist.	<i>It's no wonder that she's mad at you.</i>
Wir haben keine Aussichten auf eine bessere Zukunft.	<i>We have no indications of a better future.</i>
Leider müssen wir auf den Film verzichten.	<i>Unfortunately we'll have to do without the film.</i>
Unsere Kinder sind verrückt auf ihren neuen Coach.	<i>Our children are crazy about their new coach.</i>
Er hat gar nicht auf meinen Vorschlag reagiert.	<i>He never reacted to my suggestion.</i>
Du kannst auf dich stolz sein.	<i>You can be proud of yourself.</i>
Er hat sich total in sie verliebt.	<i>He's totally fallen in love with her.</i>
Wir sind glücklich über das neue Haus.	<i>We're happy about the new house.</i>
Ich freue mich auf deinen Besuch.	<i>I'm looking forward to your visit.</i>
Wir sprechen gerade über die politische Situation.	<i>We're just now talking about the political situation.</i>

¹ The so-called "der-words" are the articles *der, die, das; dies-, jed-, jen-, manch-, solch-, welch-*. The "ein-words" are *ein, kein*, and the possessive pronouns: *mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, Ihr, ihr*

AKK PRONOUNS

Pronouns

Personal Pronouns in the Accusative Case

Aside from the nominative case, most of the German **pronouns** are **declined** according to case. Like in English, when the **subject becomes the object, the pronoun changes**. For instance, *ich* changes to *mich* (accusative object) as in *Sie sieht mich.* (She sees me.).

Nominative (subject) Accusative (object)

ich (I)	mich (me)
du (you singular informal)	dich (you singular informal)
er (he) sie (she) es (it)	ihn (him) sie (her) es (it)
wir (we)	uns (us)
ihr (you plural informal)	euch (you plural informal)
sie (they)	sie (them)

Notice that apart from masculine singular, the **third person forms are the same** in nominative and accusative. The masculine form, which does change, has the same endings as the definite article (*der* becomes *den*).

Possessive Pronouns in the Accusative Case

You might remember from the lesson "Personal Pronouns" that German possessive pronouns change their endings like the indefinite article:

- *ein Hund, mein Hund*
- *eine Katze, meine Katze*

This extends to all cases. You already know that **in the accusative case, only masculine singular changes**:

- **Ein Hund** schläft. Er sieht **einen Hund**.

but:

- **Eine Katze** schläft. Sie sieht **eine Katze**. (no change)

So, if you see *einen, meinen, unseren* and so forth with a singular noun, you will know two things:

- the noun is masculine
- the noun is in the accusative case (probably the object of the sentence)

Consider this example:

- Meinen Hund mag die Frau nicht.

It is clear here that the dog must be the object (accusative). So actually the woman does not like the dog.

Here is the table of possessive pronouns for the accusative case:

Accusative **derHund** **dasInsekt** **dieKatze** **dieHunde**

	def. article	einen	ein	eine	(keine)
ich		meinen	mein	meine	meine
du		deinen	dein	deine	deine
er/es		seinen	sein	seine	seine
sie (fem.)		ihren	ihr	ihre	ihre
wir		unseren	unser	unsere	unsere
ihr		euren	euer	eure	eure

sie (plural) **ihr**en **ihr** **ihr**e **ihr**e

Other declining words

Viel vs. viele

These roughly correspond to English "much/many". Use **viel** with uncountable nouns, **viele** with countable ones.

- Ich trinke **viel** Wasser.
- Ich habe **viele** Hunde.

Viele changes endings like the articles. But because the plural forms are the same for nominative and accusative, for now it will look always the same.

Jeder

Jeder changes endings like definite articles:

- die Frau, jede Frau
- das Mädchen, jedes Mädchen
- der Mann, jeder Mann — **den** Mann, **jeden** Mann (accusative)

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Accusative-Pronouns/tips-and-notes>>

DATIVE I

Tuesday, November 13, 2018 11:28 AM

The Dative Case

Welcome to the third important case in German :) Later on, there will be a last, less important one.

Remember the Accusative ?

You already saw that the **accusative case** can be used in different ways.

It can signify the *object of a sentence*:

- Der Hund frisst *den Vogel*. (The dog is eating the bird.)

This is called the **direct object** (or **accusative object**).

It can also be used *in combination with some prepositions*:

- Sie geht *ohne den Hund*. (She walks without the dog.)
- Er hat einen Mantel *ohne Knöpfe*. (He has a coat without buttons.)

Dative object

The **dative case** also **has a range of different functions**.

In this lesson, you learn to use it with the **indirect object**. This is also called the **dative object**.

The indirect object in a sentence is the **receiver of the direct (accusative) object**.

For example, *Frau* is the indirect (dative) object in:

- Das Mädchen gibt *einer Frau* den Apfel. (A girl gives the apple *to a woman*.)

You can think about it as "the other person involved" in a transaction.

- Ich gebe *dem Mann* einen Apfel. (I give *the man* an apple.)
- Sie zeigt *dem Kind* den Hund. (She shows *the child* the dog.)

Generally, the **dative object comes before the accusative object**.

Dative verbs

The dative is also used for certain dative verbs such as *danken* (to thank) and *antworten* (to answer), or *helfen* (to help):

- Ich danke *dem Kind*. (I thank the child.)
- Ich helfe *der Frau*. (I help the woman.)
- Ich antworte *meinem Bruder*. (I answer my brother.)

These verbs don't have an accusative object.

Dative articles

Note that the **dative changes all articles for the words**.

For example, *die Katze* is a feminine noun. However, the article in dative will be *der*. This might look like the masculine article. But in the context of a sentence, there will never be any confusion between the two, as long as you know your genders. This is one reason why it's so important to know the gender of a word.

definite articles Nominative Accusative Dative

masculine	der	den	dem
neuter	das	das	dem
feminine	die	die	der
plural	die	die	den

indefinite articles Nominative Accusative Dative

masculine	ein	einen	einem
neuter	ein	ein	einem
feminine	eine	eine	einer
plural	(keine)	(keine)	(keinen)

Notice how **masculine and neuter look the same in Dative**(just like they look the same for Nominative indefinite articles).

This also means that if you see a noun in the Dative, and the article ends in *-r*, it will be a feminine word. Alternatively, if it ends in *-m*, it won't.

It is very much **worth remembering these Dative endings**, because they will pop up in different context, and help you a lot to sort out the grammar. In a way, Dative is the "simplest" case :)

Dative endings

Masculine/Neuter -m

Feminine -r

Plural -n

Plural Nouns in Dative

Here's a great rule:

Plural Dative: Everything gets an -n

(Insert Oprah Winfrey GIF here)

You just saw that articles (also pronouns etc.) get an -n ending in dative plural.

Later, you will learn that the German ending system for adjectives is a bit complicated. However, in dative plural, you just **add an -n**.

It goes so far that even **plural forms of nouns get an extra -n in the Dative**.

- Er hat *drei Hunde*. Er spielt *mit drei Hunden*. (He plays with three dogs.)
- Die Computer sind alt. Ich antworte *den Computern*. (I answer the computers.)

There are two "exceptions":

- If the plural already end in -n, you're set.
- If the plural ends in -s, there's also no change.

Even more -n

Some masculine nouns add an -en or -n ending in the dative and in all other cases besides the nominative. For example in the dative, it is *dem Jungen* (the boy).

If you want to look these up, the term for them is "n-Declension".

From <<https://www.duolingo.com/skill/de/Dative-Case/tips-and-notes>>

DATIVE II

Monday, February 25, 2019 3:16 PM

In English:

In standard English, the indirect object is marked either by a prepositional phrase, word order or by certain forms of personal pronoun (*me, us, him, her, and them*). Thus: "He gave his girlfriend a diamond ring;" "He gave a diamond ring to his girlfriend;" "He gave her it;" or "He gave it to her."

In German:

The dative case has several functions in German. It is marked in a variety of ways, with word order being the least important. The dative personal pronouns are:

mir = me	uns = us
dir = you	euch = y'all
	Ihnen = you
ihm = him ihr = her ihm = it	ihnen = they

There are dative forms for other pronouns: *man* becomes *einem*, *keiner* becomes *keinem*, and *wer* becomes *wem*. In colloquial speech, *jemand* is more common, but *jemandem* is possible. The reflexive pronoun "sich" can indicate either the accusative or dative form of *er, sie* (= she), *es, Sie*, or *sie* (= they).

As with the [nominative](#) and [accusative](#) cases, articles and adjective endings mark the dative, but here there is no distinction between a "der-word" and an "ein-word". However, endings are still different when there is no article at all. Note that plural nouns themselves receive an "-n" unless they already end in "-n" or "-s":¹

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
-----------	----------	--------	--------

dem roten Stuhl	der neuen Lampe	dem alten Buch	den roten Stühlen
rotem Stuhl	neuer Lampe	altem Buch	alten Büchern

As in the accusative case, the so-called weak masculine nouns take an "-n" (or "-en") in the dative (as well as in the genitive). Among these nouns are those that end in "-e" (except *Käse* [cheese]):

nom.	der Mensch	der Nachbar	der Herr	der Held
------	------------	-------------	----------	----------

<i>acc.</i>	den Menschen	den Nachbarn	den Herrn	den Helden
<i>dat.</i>	dem Menschen [human]	dem Nachbarn [neighbor]	dem Herrn [lord; gentleman]	dem Helden [hero]
<i>nom.</i>	der Name	der Kunde	der Junge	der Experte
<i>acc.</i>	den Namen	den Kunden	den Jungen	den Experten
<i>dat.</i>	dem Namen [name]	dem Kunden [customer]	dem Jungen [boy]	dem Experten [expert]
<i>nom.</i>	der Glaube	der Wille	der Gedanke	der Türke
<i>acc.</i>	den Glauben	den Willen	den Gedanken	den Türken
<i>dat.</i>	dem Glauben [belief]	dem Willen [will]	dem Gedanken [thought]	dem Türken [Turk]
<i>nom.</i>	der Jude	der Russe	der Kollege	der Riese
<i>acc.</i>	den Juden	den Russen	den Kollegen	den Riesen
<i>dat.</i>	dem Juden [Jew]	dem Russen [Russian]	dem Kollegen [colleague]	dem Riesen [giant]

Other endings of weak nouns are "-ant," "-arch," "-ege," "-ent," "-ist," "-oge," "-om," "-oph," and "-ot." Some examples:

der Buddist [Buddhist]	der Katholik [Catholic]	der Protestant [Protestant]	der Pilot [pilot]
der Student [student]	der Komödiant [comedian]	der Astronom [astronomer]	der Patriarch [patriarch]
der Philosoph [philosopher]	der Fotograf [photographer]	der Enthusiast [enthusiast]	der Anthropologe [anthropologist]

Again: note that all of these nouns are masculine. Furthermore, their plural forms are the same as their dative singular forms: e.g., *dem Studenten*; [*plural:*] *Studenten*. ("Herr" is an exception: *den Herrn*; [*plural:*] *Herren*).

Typically, dictionaries identify weak nouns by giving not only the plural but also the weak ending: "der Bauer (-n, -n) *farmer, peasant*". This first ending cited is actually that of the [genitive case](#), but with weak nouns the dative and the genitive are usually identical. There are a few [exceptions](#).

One neuter noun is also weak in the dative (and takes an "-ens" in the genitive):

<i>nom.</i>	das Herz
<i>acc.</i>	das Herz
<i>dat.</i>	dem Herzen
<i>gen.</i>	des Herzens [heart]



They need time to grow. We give it to them. The future has long been with us. [= an ad promoting the use of coal while wind energy gets further developed]

Uses of the dative case:

1) To designate the indirect object of a verb.

Er erzählt seinen Kindern eine Geschichte.

He tells his children a story.

Sie schreibt mir eine E-mail.

She writes me an e-mail.

Er erklärte seiner Frau, warum er ihr ganzes Geld auf dieses Pferd setzte.

He explained to his wife why he put all her money on this horse.

Er schreibt ihr einen langen Brief.

He writes her a long letter.

Was schenken Sie ihrem Vater zum Geburtstag?

What are you giving your father for his birthday?

Kannst du das der Polizei beweisen?

Can you prove that to the police?

2) When there are two objects (direct and indirect): a dative noun precedes an accusative noun; an accusative pronoun precedes a dative pronoun; and a pronoun always a noun:

Ich gebe dem Mann ein Buch.

Ich gebe es dem Mann.

Ich gebe ihm das Buch.

Ich gebe es ihm.

It is possible to change this word order for emphasis, e.g. "Ich habe das Buch dem Mann gegeben (und nicht der Frau)."

Tim Ferriss, der Fitness-Freak



Seine Diät-Tipps sind radikal. Das Training scheint den Naturgesetzen zu widersprechen. Tim Ferriss bringt seinen Körper mit ungewöhnlichen Methoden in Topform.

His diet tips are radical. His training seems to contradict the laws of nature.
Tim Ferriss brings his body into top form with unusual methods.

3) Some verbs take the dative case even though logic might suggest the accusative:

Sie glaubt <u>mir</u> nicht. ²	<i>She doesn't believe me.</i>
Ich danke <u>dir</u> .	<i>I thank you.</i>
Kannst du <u>mir</u> verzeihen?	<i>Can you forgive me?</i>
Helfen Sie <u>mir</u> !	<i>Help me!</i>
Er hat <u>ihr</u> nicht geantwortet.	<i>He didn't answer her.</i>
Sie folgte <u>ihrem</u> Mann durch die Tür.	<i>She followed her husband through the door.</i>
Das Kind gehorcht <u>seinen</u> Eltern gar nicht.	<i>The child doesn't obey its parents at all.</i>
Der Wagen gehört <u>meiner</u> Schwester.	<i>The car belongs to my sister.</i>
Was ist <u>dir</u> geschehen?	<i>What happened to you?</i>
Ich bin <u>ihr</u> oft in der Stadt begegnet.	<i>I often ran into her in town.</i>
Sie ähnelt <u>ihrer</u> Mutter.	<i>She resembles her mother.</i>
Du gleichst <u>dem</u> Geist, den du begreifst.	<i>You resemble the spirit that you comprehend.</i>
Eine Entschuldigung genügt <u>uns</u> nicht.	<i>An apology isn't enough for us.</i>
Ich gratuliere <u>dir</u> zu deinem Nobelpreis.	<i>I congratulate you on your Nobel Prize.</i>
Seine Rede hat <u>mir</u> sehr imponiert.	<i>His speech impressed me very much.</i>
Deine Ausreden nützen <u>uns</u> wenig.	<i>Your excuses aren't much use to us.</i>
Sein Name fällt <u>mir</u> nicht ein.	<i>His name doesn't occur to me.</i>
Ich rate <u>dir</u> , mit dem Bus zu fahren.	<i>I advise you to go by bus.</i>
Das schadet <u>ihm</u> nicht.	<i>That does him no harm.</i>

Immer schmeichelt er <u>seinem Chef</u> .	<i>He flatters his boss all the time.</i>
Du kannst <u>mir</u> trauen.	<i>You can trust me.</i>
Widersprechen Sie <u>mir</u> nicht.	<i>Don't contradict me.</i>
Das widerspricht <u>den Naturgesetzen</u> .	<i>That contradicts the laws of nature.</i>

4) A number of verbs with the inseparable prefix "ent-**" or the separable "**nach-**" take dative objects:**

Du kannst <u>deinem Schicksal</u> nicht entgehen.	<i>You can't escape/avoid your fate.</i>
Er konnte <u>der Polizei</u> nicht entkommen.	<i>He couldn't escape the police.</i>
Der Hund ist <u>mir</u> entlaufen.	<i>The dog ran away from me.</i>
Sie will <u>diesen Problemen</u> nachgehen.	<i>She wants to investigate these problems.</i>
Fahr los. Wir kommen <u>dir</u> später nach.	<i>Start driving. We'll follow you later.</i>
Der Hund läuft <u>der Katze</u> nach.	<i>The dog chases after the cat.</i>

5) Still other verbs with the separable prefixes "bei-**" and "**zu-**" take dative objects:**

Sie steht <u>ihrem Mann</u> bei.	<i>She helps/stands by her husband.</i>
Wir wollen <u>der Sitzung</u> beiwohnen.	<i>We want to attend the meeting.</i>
Hören Sie <u>mir</u> bitte gut zu.	<i>Please listen to me closely.</i>
Die Unbekannte lächelt <u>ihm</u> zu.	<i>The unknown woman smiles at him.</i>
Während sie spielt, schauen <u>ihr</u> die Männer zu.	<i>The men watch her while she plays.</i>
Sie ist dagegen, und ich stimme <u>ihr</u> zu.	<i>She's against it, and I agree with her.</i>
Er wollte <u>einer linken Partei</u> beitreten.	<i>He wanted to join a leftist party.</i>

6) With some verbs, the dative object would become the subject in an English translation:

Die richtigen Leute fehlen <u>uns</u> .	<i>We lack/are missing the right people</i>
Dein neuer Freund gefällt <u>mir</u> .	<i>I like your new friend.</i>
Beim dritten Versuch gelingt es <u>uns</u> .	<i>We succeed on the third try.</i>
Deine Frau tut <u>mir</u> Leid.	<i>I feel sorry for your wife.</i>

7) The so-called "dative of interest" establishes a point of view. Here too, the dative object can often be rendered as the subject in English:

Es ist <u>mir</u> kalt.	<i>I'm cold.</i>
Jetzt reicht's <u>mir</u> aber!	<i>I've had enough of that!</i>
Seine Haltung passt <u>ihr</u> nicht.	<i>She doesn't like his attitude.</i>
Ist <u>Ihnen</u> nicht wohl?	<i>Don't you feel well?</i>

Wie geht's <u>dir</u> ?	<i>How are you?</i>
Das kommt <u>mir</u> irgendwie bekannt vor.	<i>That somehow seems familiar to me.</i>
Ist der Stuhl <u>dir</u> unbequem?	<i>Is the chair uncomfortable for you?</i>
Das war <u>meinem Mann</u> zu dumm.	<i>My husband found that too stupid.</i>

8) The "dative of interest" often appears with predicate adjectives or predicate nominatives:

Das ist <u>meiner Mutter</u> besonders interessant.	<i>That's especially interesting to my mother.</i>
Meine Kinder sind <u>mir</u> eine einzige Freude.	<i>My children are nothing but a joy to me.</i>
Das ist <u>ihm</u> sehr peinlich.	<i>That's very embarrassing to him.</i>
Sie ist <u>ihrem Mann</u> in allem weit überlegen.	<i>She vastly superior to her husband in all things.</i>
Diese Mode ist <u>Europäern</u> völlig unbekannt.	<i>This fashion is wholly unknown to Europeans.</i>
Wir sind <u>Ihnen</u> sehr dankbar.	<i>We're very grateful to you.</i>
Das ist <u>dir</u> bestimmt leicht.	<i>That's surely easy for you.</i>
Ihr Anruf ist <u>uns</u> sehr wichtig.	<i>Your call is very important to us.</i>
Das ist <u>mir</u> unmöglich.	<i>That's impossible for me.</i>
Die Jacke ist <u>ihr</u> zu teuer.	<i>The jacket is too expensive for her.</i>
Das scheint <u>mir</u> richtig zu sein.	<i>That seems correct to me.</i>

9) The dative can also indicate toward whom an action is directed, especially when parts of the body are involved:

Sie haut <u>ihm</u> eins in die Fresse.	<i>She pops him one in the chops.</i>
Sie klopft <u>ihm</u> auf die Schulter.	<i>She taps him on the shoulder.</i>
Tut <u>Ihnen</u> der Kopf weh?	<i>Do you have a headache?</i>
Ich muss <u>meiner Tochter</u> die Schuhe anziehen.	<i>I have to put my daughter's shoes on (her).</i>
Er hat <u>ihr</u> die Nase gebrochen.	<i>He broke her nose.</i>
Ich will <u>ihm</u> den Kopf waschen	<i>"I'll wash his head" (= I'm going to give him a piece of my mind).</i>
Sie putzt <u>ihm</u> die Zähne.	<i>She brushes his teeth.</i>

10) Of course the reflexive is used when the the action is directed back toward the subject:

Du sollst <u>dir</u> die Zähne putzen.	<i>You ought to brush your teeth.</i>
Ich habe <u>mir</u> den Finger gebrochen.	<i>I broke my finger.</i>
Er kämmt <u>sich</u> die Haare.	<i>He combs his hair.</i>
Sie färbt <u>sich</u> die Haare.	<i>She dyes her hair.</i>
Er rasiert <u>sich</u> die Beine.	<i>He shaves his legs.</i>
Ich wasche <u>mir</u> die Hände in Unschuld.	<i>I will wash my hands in innocence (Psalms 26: 6)</i>

With prepositions:



Conveyance only with a valid ticket. After 8 p.m. please enter at the front by the driver and show your ticket.

The object of the following prepositions is always in the dative: **aus**, **außer**, **bei**, **gegenüber**, **mit**, **nach**, **seit**, **von**, and **zu**. Note that "bei dem," "von dem," "zu dem," and "zu der" are normally contracted:

Die Katze sprang aus dem Fenster.

The cat jumped out of the window.

Er war aus dem Häuschen.

He was over the moon.

Außer deinem Bruder taugt deine Familie nicht viel.

Except for your brother, your family isn't worth much.

Sollen wir bei mir Essen?

Should we eat at my place?

Die Mönche reden nicht beim Essen.

The monks don't talk while eating.

Bei diesem Wetter bleiben wir lieber zu Hause.

In this weather it would be better to stay home.

Wer sitzt mir gegenüber?

Who's sitting across from me?

Er tanzt mit seiner Frau.

He's dancing with his wife.

Fährst du mit der Bahn oder mit dem Wagen?

Are you going by train or by car?

Nach dem Film gehen wir zu dir.

After the movie we'll go to your place.

Seiner Mutter nach ist er ein Genie.

According to his mother he's a genius.

Sie arbeitet seit zwei Jahren in Berlin.

She's been working in Berlin for two years.

Viele Studenten bekommen Geld vom Staat.

A lot of students get money from the state.

Sie ist die Frau von meinem Onkel.

She's my uncle's wife.

Hast du was zum Schreiben?

Do you have something to write with?

Rotkäppchen geht zur Großmutter

Little Red Ridinghood is going to her grandmother's.

**Bitte aussteigen, links
neben der Tür klingeln
und
über die Sprechanlage
beim Pförtner melden.**

Please exit your car, ring (the bell) to the left of the door and announce yourself to the porter over the intercom.

Under certain circumstances the dative is used with the following "two-way" prepositions:

an, auf, hinter, in, neben, entlang, über, unter, vor, and zwischen.

When these prepositions delineate a spacial area, and the verb's action or lack of action remains entirely within the area, they take the dative. If the verb indicates movement that crosses the border into that area, the preposition takes the [accusative case](#)):

Die Gäste sitzen am Tisch.

The guests are sitting at the table.

Der Hund liegt auf dem Teppich.

The dog's lying on the rug.

Sie arbeitet hinter dem Haus.

She's working behind the house.

Man kann nicht zwischen zwei Stühlen sitzen. *You can't sit between two chairs.*

"**an dem**" and "**in dem**" are usually contracted:

Er steht am Fenster.

He stands at the window.

Es gibt einen Fremden im Haus. *There's a stranger in the house.*



Cell Phone Repair Service for small repairs. Bring it in to the booth in the morning and pick it up on the same day in the afternoon. Or visit us in the Nokia Shop Berlin at Hauptstrasse 80a in Friedenau and have your phone repaired immediately.

When these two-way prepositions define time, rather than space, they usually take the dative. The exceptions are "auf" and "über":

Am Montag machen wir die Wäsche.

We do the laundry on Monday.

In der Nacht sind alle Katzen grau.

At night all cats are grey [Any port in a storm].

Er soll unter einer Stunde reden.

He's supposed to talk for under an hour.

Aber er hat über eine Stunde geredet.

But he talked for over an hour.

Vor jedem Essen trinken wir ein Glas Portwein. *We drink a glass of port before each meal.*

Vor einem Jahr hat sie kein Deutsch gekonnt. *A year ago she couldn't speak any German.*

Auf eine Woche Ausbildung folgte eine Pause. *After a week of training there followed a pause.*



These two-way prepositions take the dative case in certain idioms, as well. A few examples:

Sie arbeitet jetzt an einem Buch.

She's working on a book.

Das Kind hängt an mir.

The child is attached to me.

Das Wasser ist am Kochen.

The water's boiling.

Ich zweifle an seinem guten Willen.

I have doubts about his good will.

Sie hat lange an Krebs gelitten und ist dann an dieser Krankheit gestorben.

She suffered from cancer for a long time and then died of this disease.

In Deutschland gibt es einen Mangel an Kindern.

In Germany there's a shortage of children.

Du bist schuld an meiner Erkältung.

It's your fault I have a cold.

Nimmst du am Programm teil?

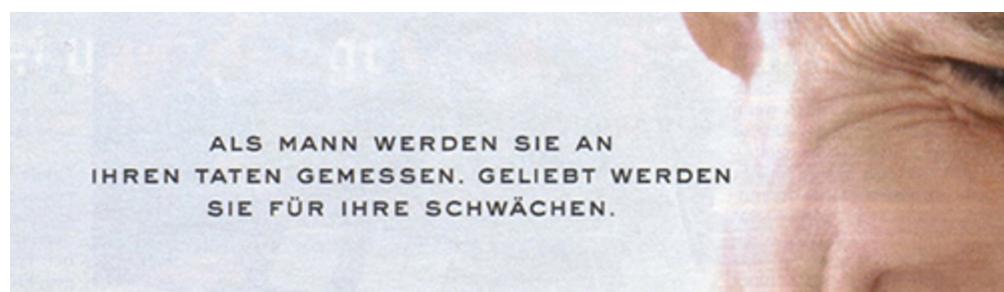
Are you taking part in the program?

Kuwait ist reich an Öl.

Kuwait has abundant oil.

Wir messen ihn an seinen Taten.

We measure him by his deeds.



As a man, you're measured by your deeds. You're loved for your weaknesses.

Sie besteht auf ihrem Recht.

She insists on her rights.

Unter diesen Bedingungen bin ich bereit, es zu tun.

Under these conditions I'm ready to do it.

Sie führen ein Gespräch unter vier Augen.

They're having a tête-à-tête.

Weil wir jetzt unter uns sind, können wir darüber reden.

Now that we're among ourselves we can talk about it.

Endlich habe ich diese Prüfung hinter mir.

I've finally got this test out of the way.

Ich warne Sie vor dem Hund.	<i>I warn you about the dog.</i>
Er war außer sich vor Wut.	<i>He was beside himself with fury.</i>
Hast du wirklich Angst vor mir?	<i>Are you really afraid of me?</i>
Kondome schützen vor AIDS.	<i>Condoms protect (you) from AIDS.</i>
Diese Information soll zwischen meiner Mutter und mir bleiben.	<i>That information should stay between me and my mother.</i>

¹ The so-called "der-words" are the articles *der, die, das; dies-, jed-, jen-, manch-, solch-,* and *welch-*. The "ein-words" are *ein, kein,* and the possessive pronouns: *mein, dein, sein, ihr, unser, euer, Ihr, and ihr.*

² That's with people. With things *glauben* takes the accusative: "Sie glaubt meine Antwort nicht" (She doesn't believe my answer).

From <<http://www.dartmouth.edu/~deutsch/Grammatik/Nouns/dative.html>>

GENITIV

Monday, February 25, 2019 3:01 PM

The Genitive Case in English:

English shows possession through the genitive case, which marks the noun in question with "-'s" (or in a plural already ending in "-s" with just the apostrophe): "the horse's mouth"; "the books' covers." One can also use a prepositional phrase with "of": "the color of the car" (= "the car's color").

Forming the Genitive in German:

Like the [nominative](#), [accusative](#), and [dative](#) cases, the genitive case is marked by pronouns, articles and adjective endings.

In the genitive, there is no distinction between a "der-word" and an "ein-word."¹ As a rule, one-syllable nouns take an "-es" in the masculine or neuter (*des Mannes*), although colloquial speech will sometime add just -s. Multi-syllabic ones take just "-s": (*des Computers*):

Masculine	Feminine	Neuter	Plural
<u>des</u> <u>roten</u> Stuhles	<u>der</u> <u>neuen</u> Lampe	<u>des</u> <u>alten</u> Buches	<u>der</u> <u>roten</u> Stühle
<u>roten</u> Stuhles	<u>neuer</u> Lampe	<u>alten</u> Buches	<u>alter</u> Bücher

Note that the possessive adjectives (*mein, dein, sein, ihr*, etc.) are not genitive in and of themselves. Nor is the interrogative *wessen* (= "whose").

As in the accusative and dative cases, the so-called weak masculine nouns take an "-n" or "-en" in the genitive. For example:

<i>nom.</i>	der Mensch	der Nachbar	der Herr	der Held
<i>acc.</i>	den Menschen	den Nachbarn	den Herrn	den Helden
<i>dat.</i>	dem Menschen	dem Nachbarn	dem Herrn	dem Helden
<i>gen.</i>	des Menschen [human]	des Nachbarn [neighbor]	des Herrn [lord; gentleman]	des Helden [hero]
<i>nom.</i>	der Bote	der Kunde	der Junge	der Experte
<i>acc.</i>	den Boten	den Kunden	den Jungen	den Experten
<i>dat.</i>	dem Boten	dem Kunden	dem Jungen	dem Experten
<i>gen.</i>	des Boten [messenger]	des Kunden [customer]	des Jungen [boy]	des Experten [expert]
<i>nom.</i>	der Jude	der Russe	der Kollege	der Riese
<i>acc.</i>	den Juden	den Russen	den Kollegen	den Riesen
<i>dat.</i>	dem Juden	dem Russen	dem Kollegen	dem Riesen
<i>gen.</i>	des Juden [Jew]	des Russen [Russian]	des Kollegen [colleague]	des Riesen [giant]

Other endings of weak nouns are "**-ant**," "**-arch**," "**-ege**," "**-ent**," "**-ist**," "**-oge**," "**-om**," "**-oph**," **and** "**-ot**." Some examples:

der Buddhist [Buddhist]	der Katholik [Catholic]	der Protestant [Protestant]	der Pilot [pilot]
der Student [student]	der Komödiant [comedian]	der Astronom [astronomer]	der Patriarch [patriarch]
der Philosoph [philosopher]	der Fotograf [photographer]	der Enthusiast [enthusiast]	der Anthropologe [anthropologist]

Again: note that all of these nouns are masculine. Furthermore, their plural forms are the same as their accusative, dative, and genitive singular forms: e.g., *den Studenten*, *dem Studenten*, *des Studenten*; [plural:] *die Studenten*, *den Studenten*, *der Studenten*. ("Herr" is an exception: *den Herrn*, *dem Herrn*, *des Herrn*; [plural:] *die Herren*, *den Herren*, *der Herren*).

Typically, dictionaries identify weak nouns by giving not only the plural but also the weak ending: "der Bauer (-n, -n) *farmer, peasant*." The first ending that is cited is that of the genitive case. With weak nouns the accusative and the dative are usually identical with the genitive - but not *always*. A few weak nouns add "-ns," for example:

<i>nom.</i>	der Glaube	der Wille	der Gedanke	der Name
<i>acc.</i>	den Glauben	den Willen	den Gedanken	den Namen
<i>dat.</i>	dem Glauben	dem Willen	dem Gedanken	dem Namen
<i>gen.</i>	des Glaubens [belief]	des Willens [will]	des Gedankens [thought]	des Namens [name]

One neuter noun is also weak in the dative and takes an "-ens" in the genitive:

<i>nom.</i>	das Herz
<i>acc.</i>	das Herz
<i>dat.</i>	dem Herzen
<i>gen.</i>	des Herzens [heart]

While the Latin accusative and dative forms of *Jesus Christus* (*Jesum Christum, Jeso Christo*) are not used in modern German, the genitive is: *Jesu Christi*.

The genitive personal pronouns are rare nowadays, but they do exist (some further examples of their use can be found below):

meiner = (of) me	unser = (of) us
deiner = (of) you	eurer = (of) y'all
	Ihrer = (of) you
seiner = (of) him	ihrer = (of) them

ihrer = (of) her
seiner = (of) it

The demonstrative pronoun, on the other hand, is commonly employed:

dessen = (of) him/it (masc.) derer = (of) her/it (fem.) dessen = (of) it (neut.)	derer = (of) them
--	-------------------

Wir danken im Namen derer, die in Nöte geraten sind.

We give thanks in the name of those who have come into hardship.

Meine Brüder und deren Kinder sind schon angekommen.

My brothers and their children have already arrived.

In ambiguous situations, the demonstrative possessive pronoun points to the nearest preceding (i.e. the latter) noun:

Pauls Sohn und dessen Freunde haben Hunger. *Paul's son and (Paul's) son's friends are hungry.*

[not: *Paul's son and (Paul's) friends are hungry*].

When such a pronoun depends on a preceding noun, *dasselben* or *derselben* can be employed:

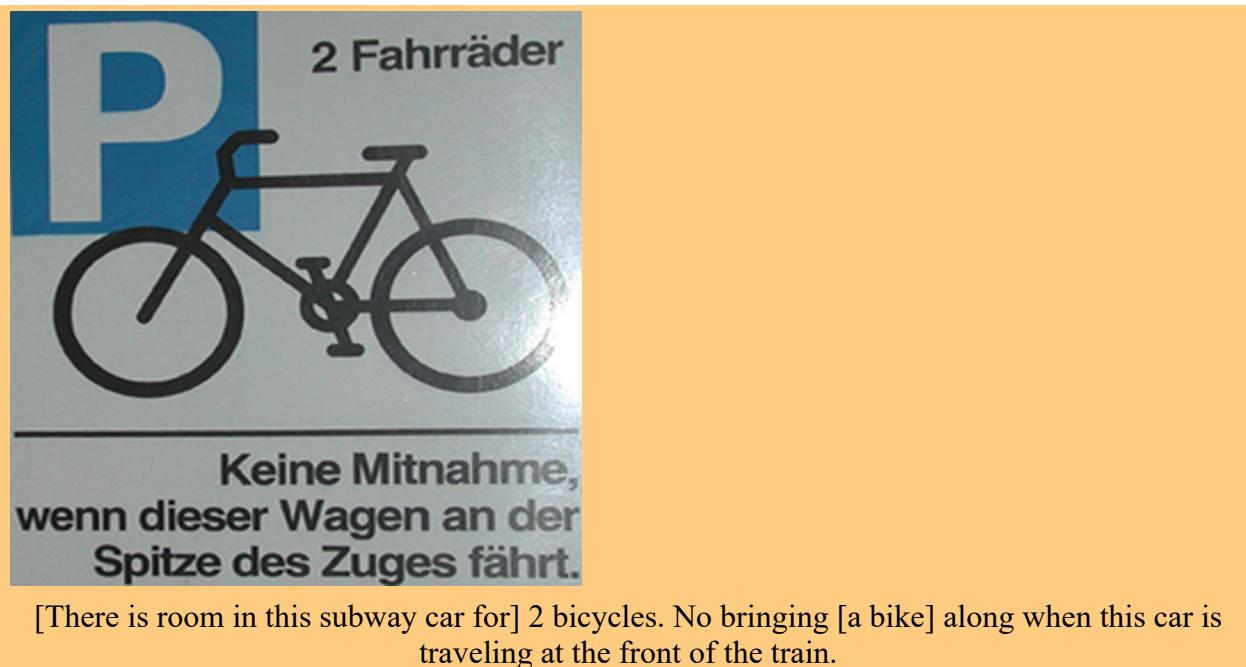
Das Mikroskop, Theorie und Anwendung desselben.

The Microscope: its Theory and Use [book title]

Die meisten Glaubenslehrer verteidigen ihre Sätze nicht, weil sie von der Wahrheit derselben überzeugt sind, sondern weil sie diese Wahrheit einmal behauptet haben.

Most doctrinal theologians defend their propositions, not because they are convinced of the truth of them, but because they have at one point asserted that truth. [aphorism by [G. C. Lichtenberg](#)]

Further pronoun examples can be found below.



Using the Genitive Case in German:

Germans will often assert that the genitive is disappearing from the language. It is certainly used less than one or two centuries ago, but it still occupies an important position. Primarily, the genitive designates a relationship between two nouns in which one of them belongs to the other. The former can be in any case, but the latter is in the genitive:

Was ist die Telefonnummer <u>deiner schönen Kusine</u> ?	<i>What is your beautiful cousin's phone number?</i>
Sie hat den Brief <u>ihres Vaters</u> gar nicht gesehen.	<i>She never saw her father's letter.</i>
Das Bild <u>deiner Frau</u> ist besonders gut.	<i>Your wife's picture is particularly good.</i>
Der Motor <u>dieses Autos</u> ist viel zu klein.	<i>This car's engine is much too small.</i>
Die größte Liebe <u>aller deutschen Männer</u> ist Fußball.	<i>The greatest love of all German men is soccer.</i>
Das Dach <u>des Hauses</u> war unbeschädigt.	<i>The roof of the house was undamaged.</i>



Success is the sum of correct decisions

Note that the genitive noun comes second. The opposite sounds either archaic or poetic:

"Das also war des Pudels Kern!" [Goethes *Faust*] *So that was the poodle's core!*

Proper names in the genitive *do* precede the noun, however. If the name already ends in "-s" or "-z," then an apostrophe is added:²

Was hast du mit Roberts altem Computer gemacht? *What did you do with Robert's old computer?*

Veronikas neuer Freund ist schön. *Veronika's new boyfriend is handsome.*

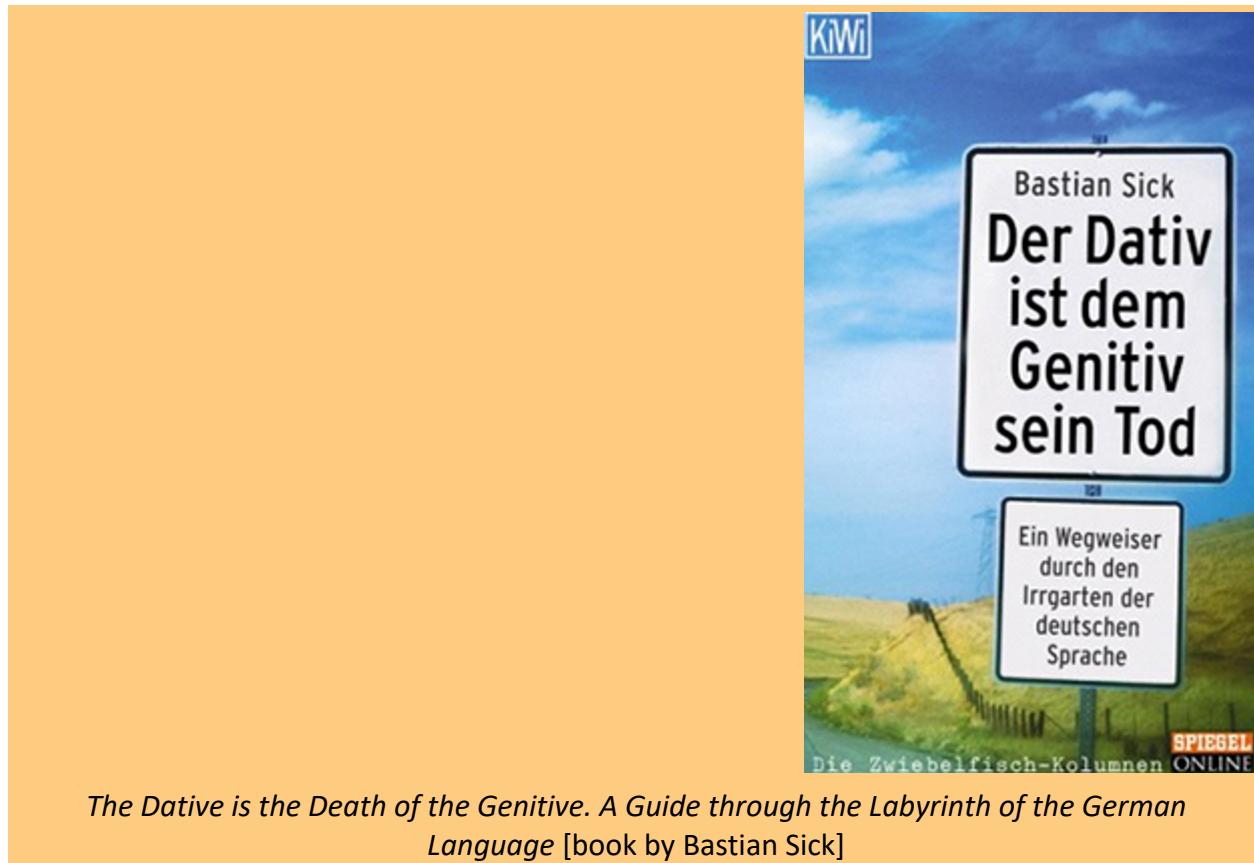
Heinz' Hut ist wirklich hässlich. *Heinz's hat is really ugly.*

In colloquial speech Germans often use the preposition *von* (with the dative, of

course) instead of the genitive:

Ist das der Freund von deinem Bruder? *Is that your brother's friend?*

Wir suchen das Haus von seiner Mutter. *We're looking for his mother's house.*



The Dative is the Death of the Genitive. A Guide through the Labyrinth of the German Language [book by Bastian Sick]

This construction with "**von**" is always used if there is no article to mark the genitive:

Er ist ein Freund von mir.

He's a friend of mine.

Das Abstellen von Fahrrädern ist verboten.

The parking of bicycles is forbidden.

Uneducated Germans sometimes use the dative and a possessive adjective to create a genitive effect: Bist du dem Mann seine Frau? *Are you the man's wife?*

The genitive is used to indicate an indefinite day or part of the day:

Eines Tages sollten wir das machen.

Some day we ought do that.

Eines Morgens hat er vergessen, sich die Schuhe anzuziehen.

One morning he forgot to put his shoes on.

Eines Sonntags gehen wir in die Kirche.

Some Sunday we'll go to church.

Although *Nacht* is feminine, it here - and only here - assumes an analogous structure: Sie ist eines Nachts weggelaufen. *She ran away one night.*



"I go to Block House [*a chain of steak houses*] only because of the salad."
"That's what they all say."

Prepositions that take the genitive:

A number of prepositions take a genitive object. The most common are **statt** and **anstatt** [*instead of*], **trotz** [*in spite of*], **wegen** [*because of*] and **während** [*during*]. In normal speech, German often use the dative after **trotz** and **wegen**. The grammar-police find that appalling, but in fact the dative is actually the older form.

Statt eines Regenmantels trägt er einen Schirm.

Instead of a raincoat he carries an umbrella.

Trotz der Kälte wollen wir schwimmen gehen.

Despite the cold we want to go swimming.

Wegen der Arbeit meines Vaters mussten wir oft umziehen.

Because of my father's work we often had to move.

Wir machen alles des Kindes wegen.

We're doing everything on account of the child.

Während des Sommers wohnt er bei seinen Großeltern.

During the summer he lives with his grandparents.

When just a masculine or neuter noun follows the preposition, there is no genitive "-s":

Anstatt Fleisch isst sie Tofu. *Instead of meat she eats tofu.*

Note also:

Er entschuldigte sich immer wieder wegen seines schlechten Deutsch.

He apologized repeatedly on account of his bad German.

Trotz ihres guten Französisch konnte sie nichts

In spite of her good French she couldn't

verstehen.

understand a thing.

Less frequently used are *außerhalb* [outside of], *innerhalb* [inside of], *oberhalb* [above], *unterhalb* [beneath], *diesseits* [on this side of], and *jenseits* [on the other side of]:

Sie wohnen außerhalb der Stadt.

They live outside the city.

Nur ein Spieler darf innerhalb dieses Kreises stehen.

Only one player is allowed to stand inside this circle.

Oberhalb dieser Linie gibt es ein paar Kratzer.

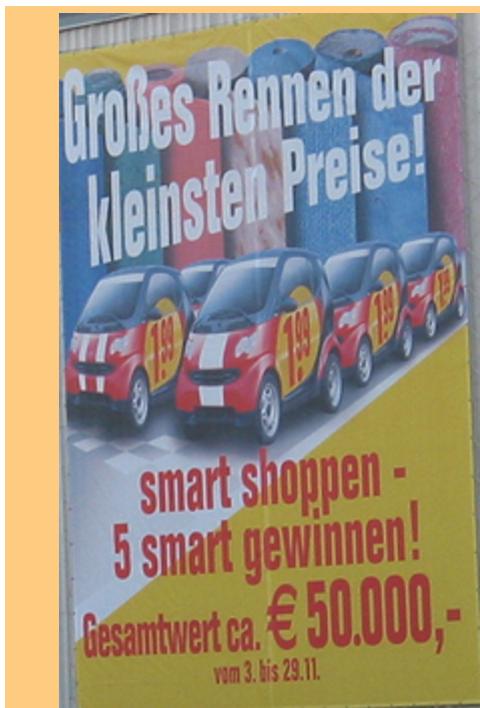
Above this line there are a couple of scratches.

Die Leber sitzt unterhalb der Lunge.

The liver is beneath the lung.

Dieseits der Grenze spricht man Deutsch, aber jenseits spricht man Holländisch.

On this side of the border German is spoken, but on the other side they speak Dutch.



The grand race of the lowest prices.

George O. Curme's *Grammar of the German Language* (New York: Macmillan, 1922) lists a total of 123 prepositions that take the genitive (p. 357), but most are very rare or confined to legal language. They include **anlässlich** [*on the occasion of*], **angesichts** [*in the face of; in view of*], **infolge** [*as a result of; owing to*], **ungeachtet** [*despite; notwithstanding*], etc.

Genitive prepositions do not form "da-" compounds. Instead we use genitive demonstrative pronouns, getting structures like **während dessen** [*in the meantime*], **statt dessen** [*instead of that*], and **trotz dessen** [*despite that*] - written as one or two words.

There is a special form of **wegen**:

Wir gehen <u>seinetwegen</u> zu Fuß.	<i>We're going on foot on account of him (for his sake).</i>
Ich mache es <u>ihretwegen</u> .	<i>I'm doing it on account of her (for her sake).</i>
Kaufen Sie das nicht <u>meinetwegen</u> .	<i>Don't buy that for my sake.</i>
<u>Meinetwegen</u> könnt ihr es verkaufen.	<i>As far as I'm concerned (for all I care), you can sell it.</i>

Verbs that take the genitive:

Quite a few verbs once took a genitive object, but over time they have switched to the accusative. One example is *vergessen*, although the name of the flower *Vergissmeinnicht* (forget-me-not) remains. Some verbs officially still take the genitive, although many native speakers will use the accusative instead. It is with such formal - some would say stilted - German that you might encounter genitive pronouns:

Die Angst bemächtigte sich <u>seiner</u> .	<i>Fear seized him.</i>
Wir bedürfen <u>Ihrer Hilfe</u> .	<i>We require your assistance.</i>
Man muss unter 16 sein, um sich <u>eines VCRs</u> zu bedienen.	<i>You have to be under 16 to operate a VCR.</i>
Ich erfreue mich <u>seiner Anwesenheit</u> .	<i>I enjoy his presence.</i>
Wir harren <u>ihrer Ankunft</u> .	<i>We patiently await her arrival.</i>

Other genitive constructions:

Some predicate adjectives are also associated with the genitive:

Er ist <u>seiner Beliebtheit</u> sehr gewiss.	<i>He's very certain of his popularity.</i>
Ich bin mir <u>dessen</u> bewusst.	<i>I'm aware of that.</i>
Ach ich bin <u>des Treibens</u> müde! [aus Goethes "Wandrer Nachtlid"]	<i>Oh, I'm weary of this restless activity</i>
Sie ist <u>des Mordes</u> schuldig.	<i>She is guilty of murder.</i>
Er ist <u>ihrer</u> nicht wert.	<i>He's not worthy of her.</i>

Certain noun phrases in the genitive act like prepositional phrases:

Er fährt immer <u>erster Klasse</u> .	<i>He always travels first class.</i>
Sie ist meine Cousine <u>ersten Grades</u> .	<i>She's my first cousin.</i>
Wir sind heute <u>guter Laune</u> .	<i>We're in a good mood today</i>
Sie geht <u>guten Mutes</u> nach Hause.	<i>She goes home in good spirits.</i>
Er arbeitet <u>festen Glaubens</u> dafür.	<i>He works for that with a firm faith.</i>
<u>Meines Erachtens</u> ist das nicht nötig.	<i>In my opinion that's not necessary.</i>
<u>Meines Wissens</u> ist nichts übrig geblieben.	<i>As far as I know, nothing was left over.</i>
Sie behauptet das <u>allen Ernstes</u> .	<i>She claims that in all seriousness</i>
Du bist heute <u>guter Dinge</u> .	<i>You're in a cheerful mood today.</i>
Wir sind <u>unverrichteter Dinge</u> zurückgekehrt.	<i>We returned having accomplished nothing.</i>

ENTRÜMPPELUNGEN

aller Art

- * Sperrmüll.
- * Plastik, Kunststoffe und Schrott.
- * Keller-, Dach- und Wohnungsenträmpelungen.
- * Abrissarbeiten.
- * Umzugsservice, Kleintransporte.
- * Renovierungen.
- * Kostenlose Besichtigung.
- * Kurzfristige Termine möglich.

MALERARBEITEN

SCHNELL, SAUBER und PREISWERT

0172-16 75 281

Entrümpelungen
Renovierungen
0172-16 75 281

Junk disposal of all kinds

bulky refuse / plastic, synthetics and scrap metal / clearing out of cellars, attics, and
apartments /

demolition work / moving service, mini-transport / free inspection / short notice possible
Painting jobs. Fast, clean, and reasonably priced.

¹ The "ein-words" are *ein*, *kein*, and the possessive pronouns: *mein*, *dein*, *sein*, *ihr*, *unser*, *euer*, *Ihr*, *ihr*.

The so-called "der-words" are the articles *der*, *die*, *das*; *dies-*, *jed-*, *jen-*, *manch-*, *solch-*, *welch-*.

² Increasingly, Germans are putting apostrophes onto all names, especially in commercial enterprises. This option is unavailable to non-native speakers.



From <<https://www.dartmouth.edu/~deutsch/Grammatik/Nouns/genitive.html>>

EXAMPLES

Wednesday, November 14, 2018 5:28 AM

"They are giving water to the women."

Translation: Den Frauen geben sie Wasser.

You can also say "Sie geben den Frauen Wasser."

QUESTION

What is wrong with "Sie geben Wasser den Frauen"?

ANSWER

If you have both a dative and an accusative object (roughly corresponding to direct and indirect object in English) there are rules how to order them:

1) if both objects are pronouns, it is , e.g. "Sie geben es ihnen" (= "they are giving it to them").

2.) if both objects are not pronouns, it is exactly the other way round , e.g. "Sie geben den Frauen das Wasser" (= "they give the water to the women / they give the women the water").

3.) if only one of the two objects is a pronoun, it goes first, independent of the case, e.g. "Sie geben ihnen das Wasser" (= "they give them the water") resp. "Sie geben es den Frauen" (= "they give it to the women").

Besides that, it is always possible to put one of the objects in the very beginning of the sentence in order to particularly stress them: "Den Frauen geben sie das Wasser", "Das Wasser geben sie den Frauen", "Den Frauen geben sie es", "Das Wasser geben sie ihnen", "Ihnen geben sie das Wasser", "Ihnen geben sie es". Well, it sounds odd with an accusative pronoun in this position (but grammatically

possible).

ANSWER 2:

I did not get this at first. After googling it, I found an extended explanation that cleared things up. It was posted by Mizinamo.

It depends on what you mean with "normal" -- it's not a neutral word order and so not the most common way to express the pure meaning.

Putting a word first focusses it, so I would use this word order to contrast something. "As for the women, they give them water". For example, it might be natural if you want to say "They give the women water but they give the men wine" (Den Frauen geben sie Wasser aber den Männern [geben sie] Wein). If you do want to focus "the women"; then this word order is natural.

The verb always has to be second in a simple sentence ("a declarative main clause"), so if you focus the dative object by putting it first, the subject has to come after the verb.

So you could have:

Sie geben den Frauen Wasser. (Neutral word order.) Den Frauen geben sie Wasser. (They give the women water. As for the women: they give them water.) Wasser geben sie den Frauen. (They give the women water. As for the water, they give that to the women.) Geben tun sie den Frauen Wasser. (They give the women water. As for giving, they give the women water. A bit more unusual, perhaps, and colloquial due to the use of "tun" as an auxiliary. Not recommended for use on Duolingo.) They (at least the first three) are all normal sentences to a German in the sense that they don't sound unusual.

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11224897>>

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11224897>>

MORE EXAMPLES

Sunday, November 18, 2018 3:21 PM

"Das ist der Herr aus dem Restaurant"

Translation: That is the gentleman from the restaurant.

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11090812>>

QUESTION

How the restaurant here is in dative case ?

ANSWER

Certain prepositions trigger a particular type of article case. To be fair, you haven't reached that point in the tree yet though; it's a little further down.

Here are the notes from that section:

DATIVE PREPOSITIONS Dative prepositions always trigger the dative case. Here they are:

aus, außer, bei, gegenüber, mit, nach, seit, von, zu

ACCUSATIVE PREPOSITIONS Accusative prepositions always trigger the accusative case. Here they are:

bis, durch, für, gegen, ohne, um

TWO-WAY PREPOSITIONS Two-way prepositions take the dative case or the accusative case depending on the context. If there's movement from one place to another, use the accusative case. If there's no movement or if there's movement within a certain place, use the dative case.

Here they are:

an, auf, entlang, hinter, in, neben, über, unter, vor, zwischen

No movement -> dative: Ich bin in einem Haus (I am in a house)

Movement within a certain place -> dative: Ich laufe in einem Wald (I am running

in [within] a forest)

Movement from one place to another -> accusative: Ich gehe in ein Haus (I am walking into a house)

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11090812>>

COMMON IDIOMS

Monday, February 25, 2019 5:57 AM

Posted on Reddit by:

[u/Doppelkammertoaster](#)

"After sharing my document for 'lassen' here the new one for some German idioms. This list is of course heavily curated. I tried to find a balance between interesting, practical and common idioms I hear and use. It was very entertaining to compose the file and I hope it will entertain you guys too!

The pdf can be downloaded at:

https://www.mediafire.com/file/hsdwkb7u1ohemh2/German_16_-_Common_Idioms.pdf/file

Let me know if you find mistakes, errors or have feedback, additions or ideas how to improve it! Happy learning!"

From <https://www.reddit.com/r/German/comments/aq8rl0/list_of_german_idioms/>

0-A

08/15 (Null-acht-fünfzehn/fuffzehn) - Das ist ein 08/15 Film.
• Something is common, not fancy and average.

A und O - Das ist das A und O.
• The most important part of something.

Abklappern - Ich muss alles abklappern.
• To have to search everywhere, to have to go to places.

Abschminken - Das kann ich mir abschminken (always reflexive)
• To know that something can't be done.

Vom Acker machen - Ich mach mich vom Acker.
• To leave a place.

In den sauren Apfel beißen - Du musst in den sauren Apfel beißen und zuhause bleiben.
• To have to accept that something unpleasant has to be done.

Der Apfel fällt nicht weit vom Stamm
• To be similar to one's parents. Said after one does something similar as their parents would have done it.

Armutszeugnis - Das ist echt ein Armutszeugnis. (refering to the deed)
• To say one has been proven to be of bad character due an action done.

Mit Argusaugen bewachen - Sie bewacht ihre Bücher mit Argusaugen.
• To keep a very close eye on something.

Sich den Arsch aufreißen - Sie bewacht ihre Bücher mit Argusaugen.
• To do your best to achieve something.

Am Arsch der Welt - Das liegt doch am Arsch der Welt.
• A place that is remote, far away and usually not well connected.

Mit dem Arsch auf Grundeis gehen - Da geht mir aber der Arsch auf Grundeis.
• To be really afraid.

Arschkarte haben - Er hat voll die Arschkarte gezogen.
• To draw the shortest stick.

Asche auf mein/dein Haupt!
• To be sorry for something, usually ironic.

Das Auge des Gesetzes
• The police.

Asche auf mein/dein Haupt:

- To be sorry for something, usually ironic.

Das Auge des Gesetzes

- The police.

Etwas ausbaden müssen - *Jetzt muss ich das ausbaden.*

- For needing to endure the aftermath of something bad and feeling being the wrong recipient for it.

B**Nur Bahnhof verstehen** - *Ich verstehe nur Bahnhof!*

- To not understand the explanation about a topic or problem.

Am Ball bleiben - *Du musst da am Ball bleiben, sonst wird das nie was!*

- To keep pursuing something.

Den Ball flach halten - *Du solltest den Ball flach halten.*

- To hold one's fire/horses.

Auf die lange Bank schieben - *Er schiebt seine Abschlussarbeit auf die lange Bank.*

- To keep putting something off.

Dort steppt/tanzt der Bär/ Dort boxt der Papst im Kettenhemd - *Alter, in dem Club tanzt aber der Bär.*

- Describing a place where a lot is happening, usually a party.

Jemanden einen Bären aufbinden - *Er bindet dir nur einen Bären auf.*

- To kid someone.

Ich bin bedient/Die Schnauze voll haben - *Ich hab' die Schnauze voll.*

- To have enough of something or someone.

Über den/dem Berg sein/ Das schlimmste überstanden haben - Thomas ist über den Berg.

- To describe that someone has passed the worst part behind them.

Einen Besen fressen - Wenn das klappt, dann fress ich einen Besen.

- That not expect that something is happening, very unlikely.

Kein Blatt vor den Mund nehmen - Tom nimmt kein Blatt vorm' [vor dem] Mund.

- To be outspoken, to not mince matters.

Das Blatt wenden - So wendet sich das Blatt!

- To turn the tide.

Blau machen - Ich mache heute blau.

- To not go to work or stating to relax for day where one should or would have to work.

Blau/breit/dicht sein - Er ist so blau/dicht!

- To be wasted.

Ein Blindes Huhn findet auch mal ein Korn

- Stating success with things one is usually very bad in.

Den Bogen überspannen - Jetzt überspannst du aber den Bogen.

- To describe that one exaggerates something.

Den Braten riechen - Ich kann den Braten von hier riechen.

- To be aware that something fishy is going on.

Rutsch mir doch den Buckel runter!

- To close the discussion with someone one has enough of.

Alles in Butter - Es ist alles in Butter.

- Stating that everything is alright.

Jemandem etwas aufs Butterbrot schmieren - Das musst du mir aber nicht so auf's Brot/Butterbrot schmieren.

- To be blunt with someone on public, to give someone one's piece of mind

C

Die Chemie stimmt - Die Chemie passt/stimmt zwischen uns.

- To have good chemistry with someone.

D

Einen Dachschaden haben/nicht alle Latten am Zaun haben/einen an der Waffel haben/ Ein Rad ab haben.

- To have a screw loose.

Ein Dauerbrenner - Das ist ein Dauerbrenner

- Something that is always popular

Unter einer Decke stecken - Thomas und Matthias stecken unter einer Decke.

- People who have planned something in secret together.

E

Eier in der Hose haben - Er hat Eier in der Hose!

- Describes someone who did something brave.

Ein Dauerbrenner - Das ist ein Dauerbrenner

- Something that is always popular

Es ist im Eimer - Der Fahrstuhl ist im Eimer.

- Something is broken

Wie ein Elefant im Porzellanladen - Er benimmt sich wie ein Elefant im Porzellanladen.

- Someone who is acting up and possibly can destroy things.

Eine Eselsbrücke bauen - Sie baut sich eine Eselsbrücke.

- To build a mental bridge/association to remember something better.

Eulen nach Athen tragen - Ach jetzt trag mal keine Eulen nach Athen.

- To describe an act that is useless.

F

Den Faden verlieren - Ich habe den Faden verloren.

- To lose the train of thought.

Das passt wie die Faust aufs Auge

- Describes two things that fit perfectly to each other.

G

Nicht das Gelbe vom Eis sein - Das ist nicht das Gelbe vom Ei.

- Stating that something is not as good as expected.

Ins Gras beißen/ über den Jordan gehen/abnippeln/krepieren/den Löffel abgeben/das zeitliche Segnen

- To die

Wer im Glashaus sitzt sollte nicht mit Steinen schmeissen

- Used in an argument or fight to address criticism of someone who can be criticized for the same.

Auf Granit beißen

- Expresses that it is futile to change the opinion of someone else.

Wer anderen eine Grube gräbt fällt selbst hinein/

- Describes the likelihood of someone hurting themselves by trying to hurt someone else.

H

Etwas an den Haaren herbeiziehen - Das zieht sie sich an den Haaren herbei.

- To imagine something from thin air that might not be true.

Etwas in den falschen Hals bekommen - Das hat er in den falschen Hals bekommen.

- Describes that someone had understood something personal wrong and is upset about it

Es zieht wie Hechtsuppe

- Describes the air draft when sitting in it.

Hummeln im Hinter haben - Er hat Hummeln im Hintern.

- Describes someone who works much or can't sit still.

Auf dem Holzweg sein - Da ist er aber auf dem Holzweg.

- To say that someone is in error.

Die Hühner satteln - Freya, komm wir satteln die Hühner.

- Joking, instead of saddling the horses. To set off/to leave.

Da wird der Hund in der Pfanne verrückt

- Phrase of surprise about something unbelievable.

I

Im wahrsten Sinne des Wortes

- To describe that something said is really true and exactly what the word means.

J

Das ist Jacke wie Hose

- Describes a fact/situation that doesn't matter.

K

Alles über einen Kamm scheren

- To combine different things into one, being superficial.

Die Katze im Sack kaufen - Ich kauf doch nicht die Katze im Sack!

- To buy something you don't know the qualities of.

Einen Kater haben - Ich habe einen Kater.

- To feel bad in the next morning after drinking too much.

Auf den Keks/die Nerven gehen - Geh' mir nicht auf die Nerven.

- To be annoying.

Etwas nicht auf die Kette kriegen - Paul kriegt heute aber nichts auf die Kette.

- To not be able to do something. Mostly a task.

Die Kirche im Dorf lassen - Jetzt lass mal die Kirche im Dorf!

- To demand that someone does not exaggerate a fact they speak of.

Halt die Klappe!

- Commanding someone to shut up.

Nicht gleich den Kopf abbreißen - Sie reißen dir sicher nicht gleich den Kopf ab.

- A saying to calm someone, that the bad thing they did was not bad enough for others to punish it. There are worse things.

Drei Kreuze [in den Kalender] machen - Ich mach drei Kreuze in den Kalender, wenn wir das geschafft haben.

- To state that one will be really happy if a certain task or event has been completed.

M

Etwas ist zum Mäusemelken - Das ist doch zum Mäusemelken.

- To describe something or an event that is weird, unbelievable. Can be an expression of frustration.

Auf jemandes Mist gewachsen sein - Das ist nicht auf meinem Mist gewachsen.

- Stating that one does not have anything to do with something that is happening. Always reflexive.

Einen Kater haben - Ich habe einen Kater.

- To feel bad in the next morning after drinking too much.

Hinter dem Mond leben - Lebst du hinter dem Mond, oder was?

- Wondering that someone doesn't know something about a current event. Living behind the moon, basically.

Aus einer Mücke einen Elefanten machen - Jetzt machst du aber aus einer na' Mücke nen' Elefanten.

- Stating that someone overexaggerates something. To make an elefant out of a fly.

N

Eine Nachteule - Michael ist eine Nachteule.

- Describes someone who is more active during the night than day, who stays awake deep into the night.

Eine Nacht-und-Nebel-Aktion - Sie haben das alles in einer Nacht-und-Nebel-Aktion gemacht.

- Describing an action that has been done in secret. Also joking about said - sometimes bad planned - action.

Eine Nadel im Heuhaufen (suchen) - Das ist wie eine Nadel im Heuhaufen.

- To describe looking for something that is almost impossible to find. The needle in the haystack.

Den Nagel auf den Kopf treffen - Jetzt triffst du den Nagel aber auf den Kopf.

- To say exactly the right thing or guess the right thing.

Sich etwas unter den Nagel reißen - Sie haben sich die Bücher unter den Nagel gerissen.

- To say that someone took possession of something without the right to do so.

Sich an die eigene Nase fassen - Er sollte sich an die eigene Nase fassen.

- To state that someone should look for mistakes in themselves than others first.

O

Einen Obolus entrichten - Du musst nur einen kleinen Obolus entrichten.

- To have to pay a small sum.

Nicht ohne sein - Sie ist nicht ohne.

- Describes that someone has some especially good or bad traits.

Sich etwas hinter die Ohren schreiben - Schreib dir das hinter die Ohren.

- To state that someone shouldn't forget what one told them. Can be a warning not to do it again.

Faustdick hinter den Ohren haben/ein Schlitzohr sein - Er hat es faustdick hinter den Ohren./Stephan ist ein Schlitzohr.

- Stating that someone else is tricky, artful, sly or cunning. Can be a warning against them.

Noch grün hinter den Ohren sein - Er ist noch ganz grün hinter den Ohren.

- Describing the lack of experience of someone else.

Jemanden übers Ohr hauen - Die haben dich über die Ohren gehauen!

- Stating that someone else swindled someone.

Öl ins Feuer gießen - Gieß doch kein Öl ins Feuer.

- To make a situation worse.

P

Das sind zwei Paar Schuhe

- To compare two things that are not comparable.

Auf die Palme bringen - Sie bringen mich so auf die Palme!

- States to being angry about something.

Seine Pappenheimer kennen - Ich kenne meine Pappenheimer.

- To say that one knows a group's of individuals well and can assess their strengths and weaknesses.

Geh hin, wo der Pfeffer wächst - Die können dahin gehen wo der Pfeffer wächst!

- Wanting someone to leave, preferably far away.

Der springende Punkt - Das ist der springende Punkt!

- Stating the gist/nitty-gritty of the matter.

Ohne Punkt und Komma reden/schreiben - Lisa redet/schreibt ohne Punkt und Komma.

- Stating that someone speaks a lot. Or (with schreiben) that someone always writes long sentences.

Bis in die Puppen wach bleiben - Sie waren wieder wach bis in die Puppen.

- Describing that one was going to bed very late.

Q

Quatsch/Quark reden - Red' doch nicht so einen Quark.

- Saying that someone should stop saying nonsense.

An der Quelle sitzen - Ich sitze hier direkt an der Quelle.

- Describing that one has easy access to something.

R

Die Radieschen von unten betrachten - Jetzt betrachtet er die Radieschen von unten.

- Saying someone is dead or has been dead for a while.

Wie ein Rohrspatz schimpfen - Stephanie schimpft wie ein Rohrspatz.

- Swearing like a sailor.

Rom wurde auch nicht an einem Tag erbaut

- To say that everything good needs time.

Ruckzuck - Jetzt aber ruckzuck./ Das geht ruckzuck!

- To say that someone should do something fast or that doing something doesn't take much time.

S

Den Salat haben - Das hättestest du nicht tun sollen. Jetzt haben wir den Salat.

- Stating that an accident happened.

Ein Schatten seiner selbst sein - Sie ist nur noch ein Schatten ihrer selbst.

- Saying that someone is only a shadow of one's former self

Über seinen Schatten springen - Du musst über deinen Schatten springen.

- To say that one should change one's behaviour for the better, do something they usually don't dare to do.

Böses im Schild führen - Er führt nur Böses im Schild.

- Stating that someone has only bad intentions.

Mit etwas Schindluder treiben - Olav treibt nur Schindluder damit.

- To act irresponsible with something.

Jemanden auf die Schippe/den Arm nehmen - Sie nehmen dich auf die Schippe.

- To take someone for a ride.

Auf dem Schlauch stehen - Robert steht auf dem Schlauch.

- Stating that someone doesn't understand something, can't follow the arguments.

Auf die Schnauze fallen - Paul ist damit so auf die Schnauze gefallen.

- State that someone failed at something.

Freuen wie ein Schneekönig - Sebastian freut sich wie ein Schneekönig.

- State that someone failed at something.

Schnee von gestern - Das ist Schnee von gestern.

- That's water under a bridge.

Alter Schwede!

- Expression of respect or surprise.

Hinter schwedischen Gardinen sein - Rebecca ist hinter schwedischen Gardinen.

- Stating that someone is in jail.

Den inneren Schweinehund überwinden - Du musst deinen inneren Schweinehund überwinden.

- To fight against the inner resistance to do something.

Ich glaub' mein Schwein pfeift!

- Expression of surprise and outrage.

Schwein haben - Da hat Charlotte aber Schwein gehabt

- Expression of relieve that nothing bad happened

Jemanden im Stich lassen - Der Vogel (a person) hat mich im Stich gelassen.

- To abandon someone, to turn one's back on someone.

T

Mit jemandem Tacheles reden - Ich muss mit Laura mal Tacheles reden.

- To be frank about issue with someone.

Nicht alle Tassen im Schrank haben - Anne hat nicht alle Tassen im Schrank.

- Stating that someone has lost their marbles.

Über den Tellerrand blicken - Olav muss mal über den Tellerrand blicken.

- To look beyond one's own nose.

Tomaten auf den Augen haben - Du hast doch Tomaten auf den Augen!

- Saying that someone can't see the obvious in front of them.

Eine treulose Tomate sein - Thomas ist aber auch eine treulose Tomate.

- Describes someone who doesn't attend appointments or is not true to their word.

U

Nichts für ungut - Ich möchte heute Abend nicht kommen, nichts für ungut.

- No hard feelings.

V

Sich in etwas verbissen haben - Danielle hat sich da echt in etwas verbissen.

- Stating that one wants to do one own's mind, no matter what.

Etwas vermasseln - Er hat es vermasselt.

- To fail at something.

In jemanden verschossen sein - Er ist so in Clarissa verschossen.

- To madly fall in love with someone.

Etwas auf Vordermann bringen - Lena bringt ihr Zimmer auf Vordermann.

- Cleaning up something or improving something.

Etwas verschlimmbessern - Lisa redet/schreibt ohne Punkt und Komma.

- To try to make something better but making it worse.

W

Den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht sehen - Er sieht den Wald vor lauter Bäumen nicht.

- To get bogged down. Not being able to see the big picture.

Stille Wasser sind tief (und dreckig).

- Describes that one can get the wrong impression about someone else, especially introverted people.

Das Wasser bis zum Hals stehen haben - Ihr steht das Wasser bis zum Hals.

- Stating one is in a complicated situation which is hard to get out of

Mir läuft das Wasser im Mund zusammen.

- States that one expects food while being hungry.

Nahe am Wasser gebaut sein - Du bist aber nah am Wasser gebaut.

- Describes someone who is emotional and easily cries.

Jemandem das Wasser nicht reichen können - Ich kann ihm das Wasser nicht reichen.

- To not being able to reach someone's performance.

Wie ein Wasserfall reden - Christian redet aber wie ein Wasserfall.

- Describes someone who talks a lot.

Alle Wege führen nach Rom.

- Describes that one can reach a goal in different ways.

Die Weisheit mit Löffeln gefressen haben - Ted hat die Weisheit mit dem Löffel gefressen.

- Describes someone who believes to know something but doesn't.

Gegen Windmühlen kämpfen - Er kämpft gegen Windmühlen.

- To describe one who battles an unwinnable fight.

Das letzte Wort haben - Sie hat immer das letzte Wort.

- To state that one will always the last argument/word in an argument.

Es geht um die Wurst.

- Stating that the result of something is important and not decided yet.

Das ist mir wurst/wurscht.

- To state that something is not important

In die Wüste schicken - Sie hat ihn in die Wüste geschickt.

- To fire/lay-off or to dismiss someone.

Z

Keinen Zacken aus der Krone fallen - Da fällt dir kein Zacken aus der Krone.

- To state that someone should do something they don't like to.

Einen Zahn zulegen - Leg mal nen' Zahn zu Matthias.

- To say that someone should do something faster.

Jemanden den Zahn ziehen - Den Zahn haben wir ihm gezogen.

- To keep someone from following an idea.

Mit dem Zaunpfahl winken - Das war ein Wink mit dem Zaunpfahl

- To state that something was an obvious hint about something.

Das Zeug dazu haben - Fritjof hat das Zeug dazu.

- Stating that one is able to do something.

In der Zwickmühle stecken - Ich stecke in der Zwickmühle.

- To be in a situation where it is hard to chose an outcome, as both are good and bad.

Auf keinen grünen Zweig kommen - Er kommt auf keinen grünen Zweig.

- To not being able to reach a stable financial position. Costs are higher han the income.

NUMBERS (ZAHLEN)

Monday, November 12, 2018 7:09 AM

Numbers in German (Deutsch)

How to count in German with cardinal and ordinal numbers.

Click on any of the numbers that are links (blue) to hear them spoken. If you can provide recordings, corrections or additional translations, please [contact me](#).

Numeral	Cardinal	Ordinal
0	null	
1	eins	erste
2	zwei	zweite
3	drei	dritte
4	vier	vierte
5	fünf	fünfte
6	sechs	sechste
7	sieben	siebte
8	acht	achte
9	neun	neunte
10	zehn	zehnte
11	elf	elfte
12	zwölf	zwölft
13	dreizehn	dreizehn
14	vierzehn	vierzehn
15	fünfzehn	fünfzehn
16	sechzehn	sechzehn
17	siebzehn	siebzehn
18	achtzehn	achtzehn
19	neunzehn	neunzehn
20	zwanzig	zwanzig
21	einundzwanzig	(-ste from here on)
22	zweiundzwanzig	
23	dreiundzwanzig	
24	vierundzwanzig	
25	fünfundzwanzig	
26	sechsundzwanzig	
27	siebenundzwanzig	
28	achtundzwanzig	

29	neunundzwanzig	
30	dreißig	
40	vierzig	
50	fünfzig	
60	sechzig	
70	siebzig	
80	achtzig	
90	neunzig	
100	hundert	
1.000	tausend	
10.000	zehntausend	
100.000	hunderttausend	
1.000.000	eine Million	
1.000.000.000	eine Milliarde	
1.000.000.000.000	eine Billion	

Fractions, decimals and percentages

	How to pronounce them
0,0	Null Komma nichts
0,1	Null Komma eins
0,12	Null Komma zwölf / Null komma eins zwei
1/2	ein Halb
1/3	ein Drittel
1/4	ein Viertel
1/5	ein Fünftel
1/6	ein Sechstel
3/4	drei Viertel
%	das Prozent, das Prozentzeichen
50%	fünfzig Prozent

Note

Decimal point = das Komma (comma) - introduced to Europe by the German mathematician and astronomer Johannes Kepler.

Hear some German numbers:

1 eins	11 elf	10 zehn	21 einundzwanzig	100 ein<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
2 zwei	12 zwölf	20 zwanzig	22 zweiundzwanzig	200 zwei<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
3 drei	13 dreizehn	30 drei<big>ß</big>ig	33 dreiunddrei<big>ß</big>ig	300 drei<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
4 vier	14 vierzehn	40 vierzig	44 vierundvierzig	400 vier<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
5 fünf	15 fünfzehn	50 fünfzig	55 fünfundfünfzig	500 fünf<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
6 sechs	16 sechzehn	60 sechzig	66 sechsundsechzig	600 sechs<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
7 sieben	17 siebzehn	70 siebzig	77 siebenundsiebzig	700 sieben<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
8 acht	18 achtzehn	80 achtzig	88 achtundachtzig	800 acht<hundred< b=""></hundred<>
9 neun	19 neunzehn	90 neunzig	99 neunundneunzig	900 neun<hundred< b=""></hundred<>

<https://youtu.be/c6hWYuoQadE>

From <<https://www.youtube.com/embed/c6hWYuoQadE>>

From <<https://www.omniglot.com/language/numbers/german.htm>>

SIE

Monday, November 12, 2018 7:04 AM

QUESTION

I find the language very confusing plurals and singular are not clear. Sie is sometimes used for them sometimes you and so times her

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/10879541>>

ANSWER

Well, I hope your confusion has cleared up somewhat over the past five months, but for your possible benefit and the benefit of newcomers:

- *sie* can mean they or them
- *sie* can mean she or her
- *Sie* is used for the "formal you" or your
- *sie* is **never** him (although *sein* is "his")

Of course, if a sentence begins with *sie* then the capitalization can make it ambiguous.

However, you can distinguish the plural *sie* (they) from the singular *sie* (she) when used in the *Nominativ* by the conjugation of the verb: "*sie hat . . .*" oder "*sie ist . . .*" z.B., u.a. for "she has . . ." or "she is . . ." and "*sie haben . . .*" oder "*sie sind . . .*" for "they have . . ." or "they are . . .".

The verbs for formal you, *Sie*, are conjugated identically to the plural *sie*(they). This is what causes the ambiguity when a sentence begins with "*Sie*".

And then when *sie* is *Akkusativ*, one must rely solely on context:

- *Ich gebe sie Geld.* means either "I gave her money" or "I gave them money". There's no way to know which is meant in isolation.
I do wonder, though, what this has to do with the given sentence which in no way uses *sie*.

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/10879541>>

ROOM

Monday, November 12, 2018 6:57 AM

"Raum" can always be translated as room, however you can say, "Ich brauche ein bisschen Raum" meaning "I need a little space"

Zimmer strictly means room as in Schlafzimmer (sleeping +room), Wohnzimmer (living + room), Badezimmer (bath + room)

Also "Der Weltraum" means the space as in universe space, as Duo teaches it: "Das All"

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/10879541>>

BEIDE

Tuesday, September 11, 2018 2:41 PM

It's "beide" when it's "both" in the nominative and accusative *without* an article like the sentence above, "Beide mögen Kaffee" or "Ich mag beide."

It's "beiden" in the dative case when there's no article as in "Mit beiden Händen" or "Gib beiden Menschen Kaffee.", etc.

It's also "beiden" when it follows the plural definite article as in "Die beiden sind groß." It's like that in all cases: Nominative: die beiden Accusative: die beiden Dative: den beiden Genitive: der beiden

And then there's "beides"

"beide" is used in the plural, for **countable** objects:

"Soll ich Mama oder Papa holen?" - "Beide **sollen** kommen!" "Das Radio und das Grammophon standen im Freien, beide **wurden** nass vom Regen."

"beides" is used in the singular, for uncountable objects or abstract objects:

"Magst du Ketchup oder Mayo auf die Pommes?" - "Beides **mussdrauf!**" "Was machst du lieber: Geschirr spülen oder Wäsche bügeln?" - "Das **ist** beides ätzend!"

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/822476>> }

BEIDE V BEIDES

They're pretty much interchangeable. The reason "beides sind richtig" returned only 35 results is that it is an incorrect construction. "Beides" takes a singular verb, however counterintuitive that may be.

From <<https://forum.wordreference.com/threads/beide-beides.37546/>>

First let me decline "die beiden Menschen" and "beide Menschen":

die beiden Menschen (nom.)
der beiden Menschen (gen.)
den beiden Menschen (dat.)
die beiden Menschen (acc.)

beide Menschen
beider Menschen
beiden Menschen
beide Menschen

I'd translate "die beiden Menschen" as "both of the men/people/human beings/etc.",

whereas "beides" would mean "either":

Beides ist richtig.
Both (ways) are correct.
Either (way) is correct.

Beide sind richtig.
Both of them are correct.
Either (way) is correct.

Got it? That's a bit difficult.

From <<https://forum.wordreference.com/threads/beide-beides.37546/>>

DIESER

Monday, September 24, 2018 2:02 PM

Well, "dieser" can be a determiner (so it indicates case and gender of a noun phrase), or a pronoun.

In each instance, it sort-of declines similarly to the definite article "the". So:

Nom: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = dieser/diese/dieses/diese

Acc: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = diesen/diese/dieses/diese

Dat: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = diesem/dieser/diesem/diesen

Gen: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = dieses/dieser/dieses/dieser

So your "dieser" and "diesen" are up there, too.

When used as a pronoun, "dieses" is often replaced by "dies". Also, "dies" can be used whatever the gender or number, in the sense of "this/these", so:

Dies sind meine Äpfel (these are my apples) Dies ist meine Uhr (this is my watch).

As a determiner, "dies" sometimes replaces "dieses" in writing, in the Neuter Nom/Acc, too.

Genug von dieser Grammatik!

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/330432>>

MAG

Wednesday, September 12, 2018 5:11 AM

mogen is not a German word - I suppose you mean *mögen* (and if you can't type that, use *ae oe ue ss* to replace ä ö ü ß: *moegen*).

mögen is the infinitive or dictionary form, and is also the form used with *wir* and *sie* (they) and *Sie*.

But the form for *er, sie, es* is *mag*:

- *ich mag*
- *du magst*
- *er, sie, es mag*
- *wir mögen*
- *ihr mögt*
- *sie, Sie mögen*

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/9923987>>

DIESER

Monday, September 24, 2018 2:02 PM

Well, "dieser" can be a determiner (so it indicates case and gender of a noun phrase), or a pronoun.

In each instance, it sort-of declines similarly to the definite article "the". So:

Nom: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = dieser/diese/dieses/diese

Acc: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = diesen/diese/dieses/diese

Dat: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = diesem/dieser/diesem/diesen

Gen: Masc/Fem/Neut/Pl = dieses/dieser/dieses/dieser

So your "dieser" and "diesen" are up there, too.

When used as a pronoun, "dieses" is often replaced by "dies". Also, "dies" can be used whatever the gender or number, in the sense of "this/these", so:

Dies sind meine Äpfel (these are my apples) Dies ist meine Uhr (this is my watch).

As a determiner, "dies" sometimes replaces "dieses" in writing, in the Neuter Nom/Acc, too.

Genug von dieser Grammatik!

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/330432>>

WHO

Monday, November 5, 2018 11:14 AM

Like who or whom, the different forms of "wer" ask for people, not for things. Note that the following explanation is a rough guideline; it's not complete.

1) Wer (who) = nominative case (asks for the subject)

Ex. **Der Mann** sieht die Frau. (**The man** sees the woman).

Wer sieht die Frau? (Who sees the woman?) - The man.

2) Wen (who[m]) = accusative case (asks for the direct object)

Ex. Der Mann sieht **die Frau**. (The man sees **the woman**).

Wen sieht der Mann? (Who(m) does the man see?) - The woman.

3) Wem (to whom) = dative case (asks for the indirect object)

Der Mann schreibt **der Frau** einen Brief. (The man writes a letter **to the woman**).

Wem schreibt der Mann einen Brief? (To whom does the man write a letter?/Who does the man write a letter to?) - To the woman.

As for "Who meets whom?"

Ex. Peter meets Sara. (Peter trifft Sara)

Peter is the subject; Sarah is the direct object. Thus, you replace "Peter" with "wer" and "Sarah" with "wen".

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/1172727/Who-meets-whom>>

ABENDESEN

Tuesday, November 13, 2018 5:59 AM

"Wir essen zu Abend."

Translation: We are eating dinner.

Instead of "Wir essen Abendessen"

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11063473>>

The problem is that the term for ordinary dinners, "Abendessen" (formal ones are often called "Dinner" or "Diner/Dîner" instead, and there's also the rather archaic "Nachtmahl"), already has the term "essen" in it, so if you just translated the English sentence word for word, it would be "wir essen Abendessen", which just sounds really clumsy (and as a child I got told that you can't *essen* an *Essen*, though that makes no sense in English, because eating a meal isn't only perfectly possible but essential to the survival of the human species).

Instead, what happens to the word is it gets turned into an infinitive clause (erweiterter Infinitiv). That's quite common in compound words ("ein zu schlafen" instead of *einschlafen*, "raus zu gehen" instead of *rausgehen*, etc) and can be very practical.

So "Abendessen" becomes "Abend zu essen", and "Mittagessen" becomes "Mittag zu essen".

That only leaves the *Frühstück*. Because three similar cases in a row would be something resembling logic, you can't say "Wir stücken zu früh". After all, the word doesn't contain an "essen". Instead, it's simply "wir essen Frühstück" or "wir frühstücken".

(Some people also simply say "Wir essen Abend". And of course, if there's any other word instead of "essen" in the sentence, you can revert to the normal word, like "we're going to lunch" = "Wir gehen zum Mittagessen")

So you'd say:

- *Wir essen zu Abend* = Wir essen Abendessen / Abendbrot = We eat supper / dinner / the evening meal
- *Wir essen am Abend* = We eat in the evening
- *Wir essen abends* = We eat in the evenings (regularly)
Similarly with *Wir essen zu Mittag* (describes the meal: lunch / dinner) versus *Wir essen am Mittag* (describes the time: at noon, once) versus *Wir essen mittags* (time: at noon, regularly).

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11063473>>

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/11063473>>

ZAHLEN/NUMMERN/ZIFFER

Monday, November 12, 2018 8:05 AM

The best explanation in that thread: " Nummern designate something specific, such as a phone number, or indicate the order of something, such as house numbers or room numbers. In contrast to Zahlen, you cannot apply arithmetic operators to Nummern. You may, for instance, add two telephone numbers (Telefonnummern) as if they were Zahlen, but the result is completely meaningless."

I'd rather say that "die Zahlen" is the mathematical term for numbers, while "die Nummern" is for the "every day" usage. Also, as a rule of thumb, you can tell that generally "eine Nummer" is not just a number, it usually has a meaning whereas "die Zahl" just quantifies something.

Digit is **die Ziffer oder das Zahlzeichen**.

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/222753>>

From <<https://forum.duolingo.com/comment/222753>>

CHARTS (links)

20 February 2019 09:12

Grammar charts:

<https://imgur.com/a/Uqnht>

NOTES |

Monday, November 5, 2018 7:23 AM

DEFINITE *	MASC	FEM	NEUT	PLU
NOM	der	die	das	die
AKK	den	die	das	die
DAT	dem	der	dem	den +n
GEN	des+s/es	der	des+s/es	der

INDEFINT*	MASC	FEM	NEUT	PLU
NOM	ein	eine	ein	keine
AKK	einen	eine	ein	keine
DAT	einem	einer	einem	keinen +n
GEN	eines+s/es	einer	eines+s/es	keiner

NOMINATIVE	AKKUSATIV	DATIV
ich (I)	mich (me)	mir (to me)
du	dich	dir
er / es / sie	ihn / es / sie	ihm / ihm / ihr
wir	uns	uns
ihr	euch	euch
sie	sie	ihnen

AKKUS	DATIV	GENITIV	AKK or DATIV
bis	aus	statt	an
durch	außer	trotz	auf
für	bei	während	hinter
gegen	gegenüber	wegen	in
ohne	mit	++	neben
um	nach		über
	seit		unter
	von		vor
	zu		zwischen

am / along the

**Seinetwegen/ihretwegen/deinedwegen, Wegen is a genitive prep, dative is a more colloquial popular use

Contractions

Some prepositions and articles can be contracted.

an + das	=ans	/ at the, to the
an + dem	=am	/ at the, to the, by the
auf + das	=aufs	
bei + dem	=beim	
in + das	=ins	/ into the
in + dem	=im	/ in the
hinter + das	=hinters	

über + das	= übers
um + das	= ums / around the
unter + das	= unters
von + dem	= vom
vor + das	= vors /after the
zu + dem	= zum
zu + der	= Zur

UMLAUTS*****

ä ei	käse (keise) mädchen (meidchen)
ö oe	österich (oesterich) löffel honig (loeffel honig)
ü ui/iu	überraschung (uiberraschung)
äu oi	kräuter (kroiter)
eu oi	das Flugzeug (das flugzoig)

- If you can use "not a/no" in English, use kein. (negates noun)

- If you need to use "not", use nicht.(negates verb)

SEIN Desde/Ya que/Hace

*****IDIOMS

Es ist noch kein Meister vom Himmel gefallen/ Still no master has fallen from the sky/ Practice makes perfect
Der Tropfen, der das Fass zum Überlaufen bringt/ The drop that overflows the keg/ The straw that breaks the camel's back
Viele Köche verderben den Brei/ Too many cooks spoil the broth
Deutsche Sprache, schwere Sprache/ German language hard language
Lachen ist die beste Medizin/ Laughter is the best medicine
Auch ein blindes Huhn findet mal ein Korn/ Even a blind chicken can find a grain/Every dog has its day
Halt die Ohren steif!/ Keep a stiff upper lip!/ Chin up!
Ich drücke dir die Daumen!/ I'll push you the thumbs/ I'll keep my fingers crossed for you
Es schüttet wie aus Eimern/ It's raining buckets
Das ist Schnee von gestern/ That's snow from yesterday/ That's old news
Jetzt geht's los! / Here we go!
Auge um Auge / An eye for an eye
Tag um Tag / Day to day
das ist zwischen dir und mir/ this is between you and me (dativ due to preposition)
Das geht dich nichts an / that is none of your business

Es gibt	There are
Da ist	There's
Wie geht es?	How's it going?
wie bitte?	Come again?
ab und zu	once in a while/ every now and then
Pass auf dich auf	Take care
hören Sie auf	Stop it!
es tut mir leid	i'm sorry
ich heisse	my name is
Was sagst du?	what are you saying?
Was brauchst du?	what do you need?
um acht uhr	at eight o'clock
Woher kommst du?/ Wo kommst du her	where are you from
Ich finde dich	I find you.../I think you're..

els back

Kann ich dich (verb)? Cain I (verb) you?
Ich bin zu Hause. I am at home.)
Ich gehe nach Hause. I am walking home/homewards
Bei Freunden At a friend's place ****Bei / At xx's
ich weiß i know (Ich kenne) (wissen)
ich weiß es nicht i don't know

UMLAUTS*****

ä ei käse (keise) mädchen (meidchen)
ö oe österich (oesterich) löffel honig (loeffel honig)
ü ui/iu überraschung (uiberraschung)
äu oi kräuter (kroiter)
eu oi das Flugzeug (das flugzoig)

PREPOSITIONS

AKKUSATIV*****

durch through
für for
gegen against / versus / run into
ohne without
um around
Entlang along

W QUESTIONS

what was
who wer
where wo
when wann
how wie
why warum (purpose/cause) also Wieso (reason/motive), Weshalb, and Weswegen
which welcher (der welcher, das welches, die welche, den welchen)

Extra

for what wofür
about what worüber
with what womit
where to wohin (Separable)
where from woher (Separable)
whose wessen (Genitive)
whom wen (akkusativ)
whom wem (Gen)
about what worüber

how much/many wie viel/viele (Wie viele is used ONLY with countable nouns, whereas Wie viel can be used in both Wohin/woher Whereto/where from hier is literally "here." her is coming and hin is going. Think of hin as always far. Woher. There is a heraus and hinaus but they are different as hin is going out farther. Often if you replace the word

*****IRGEND*****

Irgendein Some/Any (Singular only, for plural use einige, ein paar or irgendwelche)
Irgendwelche Some/Any (Plural)

)

ther away. Aus is often used with Wohin. Zu is used with
I her with here, then the translation is easy.

Irgendwas Something/Anything (Also Irgendetwas)
 Irgendwo Somewhere/Anywhere
 Irgendwer Anybody (Barely used, use Irgendjemand(Somebody)/Jemand(Someone) or just Wer as a contraction)
 Irgendwie Somehow
 Irgendwann Sometime
 Irgendetwas Something/Anything
 Irgendjemand Somebody

- nirgends/nirgendwo – irgendwo(wohin) – überall
- nowhere – somewhere/anywhere – everywhere / no matter where

• nie – irgendwann – immer

- never – some time/at some point – always/no matter when

• nichts – (irgend)(et)was/irgendwelche – alles

- nothing – something/anything – everything/all/no matter what

• niemand – (irgend)jemand/(irgend)wer – jeder/alle

- no one(body) – someone/anyone – everyone/no matter who

*****COORD CONJUNCTIONS*****

UND DENN SON-DERN ABER ODER... ABER ODER

COMMON SUBORDINATING CONJUNCTIONS (SEND VERB TO LAST POSITION)*****

als when (Past events)
 da because / since (Da er uns mag , mögen wir ihn)
 bevor before
 bis until / by
 dass that (you haven't) Er sieht, DASS du ein Buch hast.... He sees THAT you have a book
 damit so that
 nachdem after
 ob whether / if [use only if you could say "whether" in English]
 obwohl although [can also use obgleich[less common] and obschon[least common]]
 seitdem / seit since (for time, not for "because")
 sobald as soon as
 sofern provided that / as long as
 soweit insofar as
 sooft as often as (whenever)
 worüber about what
 während while / during / whereas
 weil because
 wie how
 wo where
 sowie as soon as
 ehe before
 wenn When (pres. & fut.) whenever / if ("Wenn du willst" If you want / making a statement.)
 Wann When (is only used for questions)
 als ob, als wenn, als as if
 so dass so that
 um... zu in order to
 falls in case / if
 indem by... ing

aber but
denn for / because (Excuses or after statement)
und and
sondern but/ rather (negating)
oder or
doch and yet / yet
entweder either
weder neither
"Entweder ... oder" "Either ... or"
"Weder ... noch" "Neither ... nor"

alleine alone / by itself
genug enough
nur only
schon already
noch still
immer always
immer noch still
wieder again
zusammen together
vielleicht perhaps/maybe
ich bin dran it's my turn/i'm next
noch nicht not yet
auch also
wirklich really
nur just / only
zu viel too much

*****ADJECTIVES*****

schmutzig dirty / filthy / obscene
schwer heavy / hard
leicht light / easy
tief deep
hoch high
teuer expensive
müde tired
wichtig important / significant / vital
alt old
richtig right
schnell fast
neu new
sauber clean / tidy
langsam slow
heiß hot
klein small
süß cute / sweet
lustig funny
witzig funny/ witty
traurig sad
ruhig quiet
schlau smart/ clever

schlecht bad
scharf hot/spicy & sharp (knife)h
schüchtern shy
weit far
brauchbar useful
dagegen oppose/against

*****DIE FARBEN*****

Keine Farbe Colorless (Wasser hat Keine Farbe)

Bunt Colorful
Grün Green
Blau Blue
Rot Red
Weiß White
Gelb Yellow
Schwarz Black
Pink Pink
Grau Gray
Braune Brown

*****NOUNS

Bild das picture
Baum der tree
Luft die air
Kleid das dress
Hemd das shirt
Himmel der sky
Schlüssel der key (die ****/plural)
Tasche die purse
Leute die people
Knopf der button
Schule die school
Gebäude das building
Ecke die corner
Strasse die street / road
Essen das food
vorname der first name
Erwachsene der adult
Gegner der opponent
Feind der enemy
Nachbar der neighbour
Geschlecht das gender
Frage die Question
Antwort die Answer
Beispiel das Example
Stimme die Voice
Stimmung die mood/vibe/atmosphere
Laune die mood/feeling (Gute/schlechte Laune haben or kriegen/bekommen... these are the most common)
Geschwister die siblings
Beziehung die relationship
Kuchen der cake
Küche die kitchen
Frühstück das breakfast
Speisekarte die menu
Zitrone die lemon

Getränk das beverage/drink
Zwiebel die onion
Knoblauch der garlic
Senf der mustard
Hauptgerich das, main course
Vorspeise die appetizer
Mittagessen das lunch
Abendessen das dinner
Mittag der noon
Nachtisch der dessert
Messer das knife
Gabel die fork
Löffel der spoon
Tisch der table
Geld das Money
Geldautomat der ATM machine
Apotheke die pharmacy
Dolmetscher der Interpreter
Vergünstigungen die gratificaciones/beneficios
Heute das today
Weg der way
Verkehr der traffic
Ferien die Holidays (Always plural)
Urlaub der Vacation (Verb is Macht Urlaub "To make vacations")
zukunft die future
herkunft die ancestry/origin
milch die milk
Heimwee das nostalgia/añoranza
Wehmut die melancolia/tristeza
Fernsprecher der telephone
Telefon das telephone
Wand die wall
Bett das bed
Der Körper*****
Kopf der head
Ohr das ear
Auge das eye
Nase die nose
Haare die hair
Zähne die teeth
Mund der Mouth
Gesicht das Face

alle all / everybody
alles everything
manche some
Vielen lot of/
Viele many / a lot
beiden two of/both
diese/s this
Jeder every one / each one
Jemand someone / anyone
etwas some / something

etwas a little
etwas anderes something else
anderes other
ein anderes another
Niemand nobody
ein paar a few
kein/keine not a (negating ein/eine)

***** QUICK VERBS

bauden build
brauchen need
bezahlen pay
zählen pay
zählen count (count the dots)
laufen run
leben live
kennen know
sagen say/tell
reichen suffice
können can
dürfen may
mögen like (noun)
gerne like (verb)
abendessen have dinner
einladen invite/ ask out
ausgehen go out
fahren drive
schmecken taste/ to be tasty/ to taste good
zeigen show/ point to
kaufen Buy
überweisen Transfer (money)
erklären explain/clarify
gewinnen win
Nehmen take
rufen call
bleiben stay
träumen dream
beibringen teach (bring knowledge to)
klauen take/steal (to claw something from someone)
schmökern bury oneself in a book
verarschen mock/ piss at/ fuck with
staubsaugen vacuum (suck dust)
googeln google
passen fit
aufpassen look after/ take care- of (aufpassen -auf) SEPARABLE
aufhören stop SEPARABLE
zugehen go/ reach/ walk up (Er geht auf Paris zu) He goes to paris SEPARABLE

Wort des tages:

leider unfortunately (adv)
Manschaft-die team (noun)
Wohnung -die apartment (noun)

schicken	send - to	(verb)
Termin-die	meeting	(noun)
Tasse-die	cup	(noun)
bestellen	order-to (food)	(verb)

FAMILY*****

Nichten und Neffen Nieces and Nephews

Eltern	Parents
Tante und Onkel	Aunt and uncle
Verwandte	Relatives
Oma und Opa	Grandma and Grandpa
Zwilling/e	Twin/s
Enkel	Grandchildren
Urenkel	Great-grandchildren
Großmutter	Grandmother
Urgroßmutter	Great-grandmother
Großvater	Grandfather
Urgroßvater	Great-grandfather
Verheiratet	Married
Halbbruder	Half brother
Halbschwester	Half sister
Hochzeit	Wedding
Schwanger	Pregnant

NOTES II

Tuesday, October 30, 2018 6:19 AM

UMLAUTS

ä ei käse (keise) mädchen (meidchen)
ö oe österich (oesterich) löffel honig (loeffel honig)
ü ui/iu überraschung (uiberraschung)
äu oi kräuter (kroiter)
eu oi das Flugzeug (das flugzoig)

"Noch isst sie" = She is still eating - but you just wait!"

"Sie isst noch" = She is just eating. Give her a minute or two.

"Sie isst immer noch" = Why, yes, she has not finished yet.

"Sie isst noch immer" = Goodness - WHEN is she going to finish!

Take this cum grano salis! Shades of meaning, not hammer-hard idioms.

All 4 German sentences are (or should be) acceptable translations.

Funnily enough, the german words for "Heavy" and "Light" are the same used for "Hard" and "Easy"
"Schwer und Leicht"

beide (sind) frauen // both women
beides (ist) frau // either woman

Genug (adjective)= Enough

Reichen (Verb)= To be enough / Suffice

There is an English verb - to suffice (to be sufficient) which matches the German verb reichen. This gives us WIR SEHEN (we see) DASS (that) ES (it) REICHT (suffices). This works for me by making the German sentence logical.